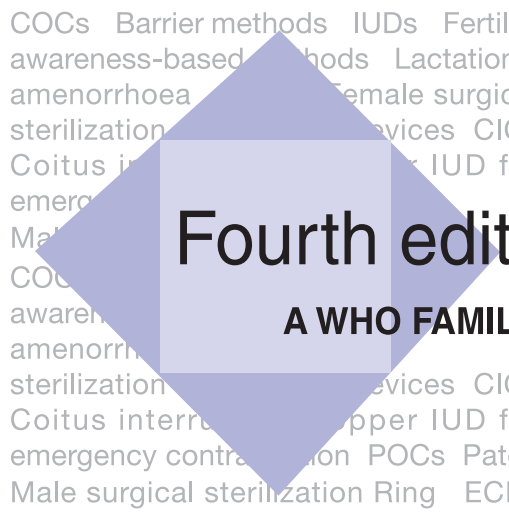
Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use



Fourth edition, 2009

A WHO FAMILY PLANNING CORNERSTONE

COCs Barrier methods IUDs Fertility
awareness-based methods Lactational
amenorrhoea Patch Female surgical
sterilization Intrauterine devices CICs
Coitus interruptus Copper IUD for
emergency contraception POCs Patch
Male surgical sterilization Ring ECPs
COCs Barrier methods IUDs Fertility
awareness-based methods Lactational
amenorrhoea Patch Female surgical
sterilization Intrauterine devices CICs
Coitus interruptus Copper IUD for
emergency contraception POCs Patch
Male surgical sterilization Ring ECPs

World Health Organization

WHO Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use – 4th ed.

1.Contraception - methods 2.Family planning - methods 3.Eligibilitydetermination - standards 4.Quality assurance, Health care 5.Health services accessibility I.World Health Organization.

ISBN 978 92 4 156388 8 (NLM classification: WP 630)

Guidance for postpartum use of combined hormonal contraceptives, and for use of the lactational amenorrhoea method among HIV-infected women has been updated since this publication first appeared on the web in 2009.

Printed in

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This document is the result of collaboration between the World Health Organization's Department of Reproductive Health and Research and a large number of international agencies and organizations active in the field of family planning policies and programmes. Funding and other support for this project was provided by the Government of the United States of America (through the US Agency for International Development, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, and the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development), the International Planned Parenthood Federation and the United Nations Population Fund. This support is gratefully acknowledged.

Representatives of 9 agencies and organizations, along with 34 other individuals, served as experts at the meeting that achieved consensus on these recommendations for contraceptive use. We would like to express our deep appreciation to all of them for contributing their time and expertise towards the consensus-building process.

The evidence on which the decisions in this document were based was in large part obtained from systematic reviews of the literature conducted and summarized by Dr KL Culwell, Dr KM Curtis, Dr ME Gaffield, Dr N Kapp, Dr K Nanda, Ms M Paulen and Dr I Tilley. We would like to express our deep appreciation to these individuals as well as to Dr T MacKay and Dr J Shelton for their strong support of this endeavour.

We are grateful to the following individuals who served as peer reviewers for the Continuous Identification of Research Evidence (CIRE) system: Dr H Akhtar, Dr W Cates, Dr T Chipato, Dr P Corfman, Dr M Cravioto, Dr V Cullins, Dr J Diaz, Dr S Diaz, Dr A Glasier, Dr M Gulmezoglu, Dr K Hagenfeldt, Dr P Hannaford, Dr R Hatcher, Dr D Huber, Dr C Huezo, Dr V Jennings, Dr R Lu, Dr P Lynam, Dr P Lumbiganon, Dr P Marchbanks, Dr O Meirik, Dr S Mittal, Dr C Morrison, Dr K Nanda, Dr E Otolorin, Dr H Peterson, Dr A Pollack, Dr H Rees, Dr R Rivera, Dr D Skegg, Dr C Smith, Dr N Simelala, Dr B Sood, Dr M Vekemanns, and Dr E Weisberg.

For any further information on this publication, please contact:
Department of Reproductive Health and Research
World Health Organization
1211 Geneva 27
Switzerland

Fax: + 41 22 791 4171
Email: reproductivehealth@who.int

Further copies may be obtained from:
Documentation Centre
Department of Reproductive Health and Research
World Health Organization
1211 Geneva 27
Switzerland

Fax:+ 41 22 791 4171
Tel: + 41 22 791 4447
Email: rhrpublications@who.int

This publication can also be downloaded from the web www.who.int/reproductivehealth. Any updates of the information contained in this document will appear in the first instance on this site.

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This document is one important step in a process for improving access to quality of care in family planning by reviewing the medical eligibility criteria for selecting methods of contraception. It updates the third edition of *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use*, published in 2004, and summarizes the main recommendations of an expert Working Group meeting held at the World Health Organization, Geneva,1–4 April 2008. (Please see Annex 2 for the list of participants.) The Working Group brought together 43 participants from 23 countries, including nine agency representatives. The document provides recommendations for appropriate medical eligibility criteria based on the latest clinical and epidemiological data and is intended to be used by policy-makers, family planning programme managers and the scientific community. It aims to provide guidance to national family planning/reproductive health programmes in the preparation of guidelines for service delivery of contraceptives. It should not be seen or used as the actual guidelines but rather as a reference.

The document covers the following family planning methods: low-dose combined oral contraceptives (COCs), combined patch (P), combined vaginal ring (R), combined injectable contraceptives (CICs), progestogen-only pills (POPs), depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), norethisterone enantate (NET-EN), levonorgestrel (LNG) and etonogestrel (ETG) implants, emergency contraceptive pills (ECPs), copper-bearing intrauterine devices (Cu-IUDs), levonorgestrel-releasing IUDs (LNG-IUDs), copper-IUD for emergency contraception (E-IUD), barrier methods (BARR), fertility awareness-based methods (FAB), lactational amenorrhoea method (LAM), coitus interruptus (CI), and female and male sterilization (STER).

WHO will update and add to the recommendations in this document at appropriate intervals through expert Working Group meetings every three to four years and through input from its family planning Guidelines Steering Group on an as-needed basis. These recommendations will be made available on the WHO web site (www.who.int/reproductivehealth). The web site will also provide additional information determined by WHO to be relevant to these recommendations, pending the next formal consensus Working Group meeting. Such updates may be particularly warranted for issues where the evidence base may change rapidly. WHO encourages research to address key unresolved issues for establishing medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use. WHO also invites comments and suggestions for improving this guidance.

OVERVIEW

In 1999, WHO reviewed its family planning guidance and determined that the creation of new evidence-based guidelines was warranted. Accordingly, WHO initiated a new series of evidence-based family planning guidelines beginning with the second edition of *Improving access to quality care in family planning. Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use*, published in 2000. The first two cornerstones of this evidence-based series (Figure 1) are this document, the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use*, which provides guidance regarding "who" can use contraceptive methods safely and the *Selected practice recommendations for contraceptive use*, which provides guidance regarding "how" to use contraceptive methods safely and effectively. These two documents provide evidence-based guidance for choosing (the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use*) and for using (the *Selected practice recommendations for contraceptive use*) contraceptive methods. The third and fourth cornerstones, The *Decision-making tool for family planning clients and providers* and *Family planning: a global handbook for providers*, are practical tools to improve the quality of family planning counselling and service delivery. These two tools incorporate the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use* and the *Selected practice recommendations for contraceptive use*. All four cornerstones are best interpreted and used in a broader context of reproductive and sexual health care.

GOAL

The goal of this document is to provide policy- and decision-makers and the scientific community with a set of recommendations that can be used for developing or revising national guidelines on medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use.

The document does not provide rigid guidelines but rather gives recommendations that provide a basis for rationalizing the provision of various contraceptives in view of the most up-to-date information available on the safety of the methods for people with certain health conditions.

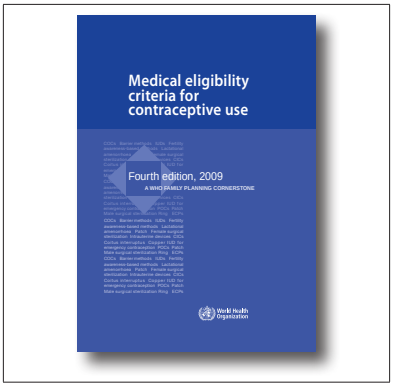
Because country situations and programme environments vary so greatly, it is inappropriate to set firm international guidelines on criteria for contraceptive use. However, it is expected that national programmes will use these for updating or developing their own contraceptive eligibility guidelines in the light of their national health policies, needs, priorities and resources. The intent is to help improve access to, and quality of, family planning services.

These improvements must be made within the context of users' informed choices and medical safety. Adaptation is not always an easy task and is best done by those well-acquainted with prevailing health conditions, behaviours, and cultures.

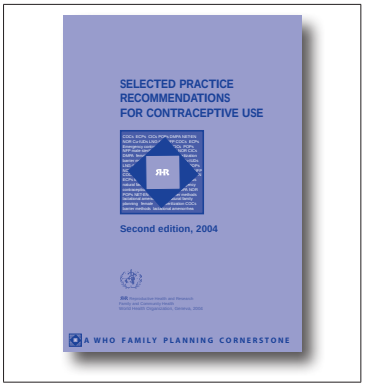
BACKGROUND

Over the past 35 years, there have been significant advances in the development of new contraceptive technologies, including transitions from high-dose to low-dose combined oral contraceptives, and from inert to copper-bearing and levonorgestrel-releasing vaginal IUDs. In addition, combined injectable contraceptives, a combined hormonal patch and vaginal ring, and progestogen-only injectables and implants have been introduced. However, current policies and health-care practices in some countries are based on scientific studies of contraceptive products that are no longer in wide use, on long-standing theoretical concerns that have never been substantiated, or on

Figure 1. The four cornerstones of family planning guidance

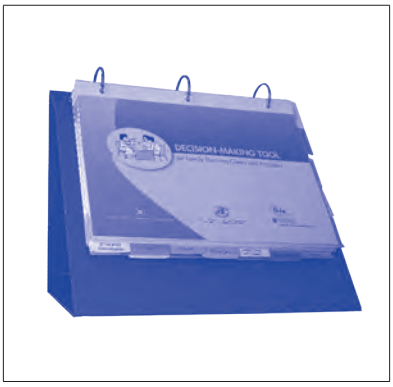


Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use



Selected practice recommendations for contraceptive use

These are evidence-based guidance and consensus-driven guidelines. They provide recommendations made by expert working groups based on an appraisal of relevant evidence. They are reviewed and updated in a timely manner.



Decision-making tool for family planning clients and providers

Family planning: a global handbook for providers

These are tools that incorporate the *Medical eligibility criteria*, the *Selected practice recommendations* and other consensus recommendations on how to meet the needs of the family planning client. They will be updated as the guidelines are updated or as other evidence warrants.

Process for assuring that the guidelines remain current:

1. Identify new, relevant evidence as soon as it becomes available through an ongoing comprehensive bibliographic search.
2. Critically appraise the new evidence.
3. Evaluate the new evidence in light of prior evidence.
4. Determine whether the newly synthesized evidence is sufficient to warrant an update of existing recommendations.
5. Provide electronic updates on WHO's reproductive health web site (www.who.int/reproductivehealth) as appropriate and determine the need to convene an expert working group to reassess guidelines formally.

the personal preference or bias of service providers. These outdated policies or practices often result in limitations to both the quality of, and the access to, family planning services for clients. This document is intended to update the medical eligibility criteria used in the provision of all hormonal contraceptives, IUDs, barrier methods, fertility awareness-based methods, coitus interruptus, lactational amenorrhoea method, male and female sterilization, and emergency contraception.

REPRODUCTIVE AND SEXUAL HEALTH CARE

> Reproductive rights embrace certain human rights that are already recognized in national laws, international human rights documents and other relevant consensus documents. These rights rest on the recognition of the basic right of all couples and individuals to decide freely and responsibly the number and spacing and timing of their children and to have the information and means to do so, and the right to attain the highest standard of sexual and reproductive health. (para. 95, Beijing Platform for Action, 1995)

Reproductive and sexual health care, including family planning services and information, is recognized not only as a key intervention for improving the health of men, women and children but also as a human right. All individuals have the right to access, choice, and the benefits of scientific progress in the selection of family planning methods. This includes people with disabilities, as specifically mandated under the Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities (articles 23.1 and 25.a).[1] A rights-based approach to the provision of contraceptives assumes a holistic view of clients, which includes taking into account clients' sexual and reproductive health-care needs and considering all appropriate eligibility criteria in helping clients choose and use a family planning method.

While this document primarily addresses medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use, considerations of social, behavioural, and other non-medical criteria, particularly client preference, must be taken into account. To provide contraceptive choices to clients in a way that respects and fulfils their human rights necessitates enabling clients to make informed choices for themselves. Women's choices, however, are often imposed or limited by direct or indirect social, economic and cultural factors. From the women's point of view, choices are made in a particular time, societal and cultural context; choices are complex, multifactorial and subject to change. Decision-making for contraceptive methods usually requires the need to make trade-offs among the different methods, with advantages and disadvantages of specific contraceptive methods varying according to individual circumstances, perceptions, and interpretations.

Delivery of care in accordance with the client's human and reproductive rights is fundamental to quality of care. The development of international norms for medical eligibility criteria and practice recommendations for contraceptive use is only one aspect of improving the quality of reproductive health care. Many family planning programmes have included screening, treatment and follow-up procedures that reflect high standards of public health and clinical practice but should not be seen as eligibility requirements for specific contraceptive methods. These procedures include the screening and treatment of cervical cancer, anaemia and sexually transmitted infections (STIs), and the promotion of breastfeeding and cessation of smoking. Such procedures should be strongly encouraged if the human and material resources are available to carry them out, but they should not be seen as prerequisites for the acceptance and use of family planning methods when they are not necessary to establish eligibility for the use or continuation of a particular method.

ISSUES OF SERVICE QUALITY AND ACCESS THAT AFFECT METHOD USE

While this document chiefly addresses medical eligibility criteria, there are many other considerations in the appropriate provision of contraceptive methods, including the following service delivery criteria which are universally relevant to the initiation and follow-up of all contraceptive method use.

a) Clients should be given adequate information in order to make an informed, voluntary choice of a contraceptive method. Information given to clients to help them make this choice should at least include: understanding of the relative effectiveness of the method; correct use of the method; how it works; common side-effects; health risks and benefits of the method; signs and symptoms that would necessitate a return to the clinic; information on return to fertility after discontinuing method use; and information on STI protection. Information should be presented using language and formats that can be easily understood and accessed by the client.

1 Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities. United Nations Enable, Rights and Dignity of Persons with Disabilities, 2007 (http://www.un.org/disabilities/, accessed on 13 January 2009).

b) For those methods that require surgical approaches, insertion, fitting and/or removal by a trained health provider (sterilization, implants, IUDs, diaphragms, cervical caps), appropriately trained personnel in adequately equipped and accessible facilities must be available in order for those methods to be offered, and appropriate infection-prevention procedures must be followed.

c) Adequate and appropriate equipment and supplies need to be maintained and held in stock (for example, contraceptive commodities, equipment and supplies for infection-prevention procedures).

d) Service providers should be provided with guidelines (or client cards or other screening tools) to enable them to screen clients appropriately for conditions in which the use of certain contraceptive methods would carry unacceptable health risks.

e) Service providers must be trained in providing family planning counselling to help clients make informed and voluntary decisions about their fertility. Counselling is a key element in quality of care and is also an important part of both initiation and follow-up visits and should respond to clients' needs not only in contraception but also related to sexuality and the prevention of STIs, including infection with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).

Table 1. Percentage of women experiencing an unintended pregnancy during the first year of typical use and the first year of perfect use of contraception and the percentage continuing use at the end of the first year: United States of America

	% of women experiencing an unintended pregnancy within the first year of use		% of women continuing use at one year[3]
Method	Typical use[1]	Perfect use[2]	
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
No method[4]	85	85	
Spermicides[5]	29	18	42
Withdrawal	27	4	43
Fertility awareness-based methods	25		51
Standard days method[6]		5	
Two day method[6]		4	
Ovulation method[6]		3	
Sponge			
Parous women	32	20	46
Nulliparous women	16	9	57
Diaphragm[7]	16	6	57
Condom[8]			
Female (Reality)	21	5	49
Male	15	2	53
Combined pill and progestogen-only pill	8	0.3	68
Evra patch	8	0.3	68
NuvaRing	8	0.3	68
Depo-Provera	3	0.3	56
Combined injectable (Lunelle)[9]	3	0.05	56
IUD			
ParaGard (copper T)	0.8	0.6	78
Mirena (LNG-IUS)	0.2	0.2	80
Implanon	0.05	0.05	84
Female sterilization	0.5	0.5	100
Male sterilization	0.15	0.10	100

Emergency contraceptive pills: treatment initiated within 72 hours after unprotected intercourse reduces the risk of pregnancy by at least 75%.[10]

Lactational amenorrhea method: LAM is a highly effective, temporary method of contraception.[11]

Source: Trussell J. Contraceptive efficacy. In: Hatcher RA, Trussell J, Nelson AL, Cates W, Stewart FH, Kowal D. *Contraceptive technology: nineteenth revised edition.* New York NY: Ardent Media, 2007.

Notes:

1. Among typical couples who initiate use of a method (not necessarily for the first time), the percentage who experience an accidental pregnancy during the first year if they do not stop use for any other reason. Estimates of the probability of pregnancy during the first year of typical use for spermicides, withdrawal, fertility awareness-based methods, the diaphragm, the male condom, the pill, and Depo-Provera are taken from the 1995 National Survey of Family Growth, corrected for underreporting of abortion; see the text for the derivation of estimates for the other methods.
2. Among couples who initiate use of a method (not necessarily for the first time) and who use it perfectly (both consistently and correctly), the percentage who experience an accidental pregnancy during the first year if they do not stop use for any other reason. See the text for the derivation of the estimate for each method.
3. Among couples attempting to avoid pregnancy, the percentage who continue to use a method for 1 year.
4. The percentages becoming pregnant in columns (2) and (3) are based on data from populations where contraception is not used and from women who cease using contraception in order to become pregnant. Among such populations, about 89% become pregnant within 1 year. This estimate was lowered slightly (to 85%) to represent the percentage who would become pregnant within 1 year among women now relying on reversible methods of contraception if they abandoned contraception altogether.
5. Foams, creams, gels, vaginal suppositories, and vaginal film.
6. The Ovulation and Two Day methods are based on evaluation of cervical mucus. The Standard Days method avoids intercourse on cycle days 8 through 19.
7. With spermicidal cream or jelly.
8. Without spermicides.
9. Source: Trussell J. Contraceptive efficacy. In Hatcher RA, Trussell J, Stewart F, Nelson A, Cates W, Guest F, Kowal D. *Contraceptive technology: eighteenth revised edition*. New York, NY: Ardent Media, 2004.
10. The treatment schedule is one dose within 120 hours after unprotected intercourse, and a second dose 12 hours after the first dose. Both doses of Plan B can be taken at the same time. Plan B (1 dose is 1 white pill) is the only dedicated product specifically marketed for emergency contraception. The Food and Drug Administration has in addition declared the following 22 brands of oral contraceptives to be safe and effective for emergency contraception: Ogestrel or Ovral (1 dose is 2 white pills), Levlen or Nordette (1 dose is 4 light-orange pills), Cryselle, Levora, Low-Ogestrel, Lo/Ovral, or Quasence (1 dose is 4 white pills), Tri-Levlen or Triphasil (1 dose is 4 yellow pills), Jolessa, Portia, Seasonale, or Trivora (1 dose is 4 pink pills), Seasonique (1 dose is 4 light-blue-green pills), Empresse (one dose is 4 orange pills), Alesse, Lessina, or Levlite, (1 dose is 5 pink pills), Aviane (one dose is 5 orange pills), and Lutera (one dose is 5 white pills).
11. However, to maintain effective protection against pregnancy, another method of contraception must be used as soon as menstruation resumes, the frequency or duration of breastfeeds is reduced, bottle feeds are introduced, or the baby reaches 6 months of age.

EFFECTIVENESS OF METHOD

Contraceptive choice is in part dependent on the effectiveness of the contraceptive method in preventing unplanned pregnancy, which, in turn, is dependent for some methods not only on the protection afforded by the method itself, but also on how consistently and correctly it is used. Table 1 compares the percentage of women experiencing an unintended pregnancy during the first year of contraceptive method use when the method is used perfectly (consistently and correctly) and when it is used typically. Both consistent and correct use can vary greatly with such characteristics as age, income, users' desires to prevent or delay pregnancy, and culture. Methods that depend on consistent and correct use by clients have a wide range of effectiveness. Most men and women tend to be more effective users as they become more experienced with a method. However, programmatic aspects also have a profound effect on how effectively the method will be used.

CONDITIONS THAT EXPOSE A WOMAN TO INCREASED RISK AS A RESULT OF UNINTENDED PREGNANCY

Women with conditions that may make unintended pregnancy an unacceptable health risk should be advised that, because of their relatively higher typical-use failure rates, sole use of barrier methods for contraception and behaviour-based methods of contraception may not be the most appropriate choice for them. These conditions are noted in Table 2.

RETURN TO FERTILITY

The use of contraceptive methods, with the exception of male and female sterilization, does not result in an irreversible change in fertility. Return to fertility is prompt with all methods, with the exception of DMPA and NET-EN; the median delay in return to fertility with these methods is 10 and 6 months, respectively, from the date of the last injection, regardless of the duration of their use. Male and female sterilization should be regarded as permanent methods, and all individuals and couples considering these methods should be counselled accordingly. No other methods result in permanent infertility.

Table 2. Conditions that expose a woman to increased risk as a result of unintended pregnancy

Breast cancer
Complicated valvular heart disease
Diabetes: insulin-dependent; with nephropathy/retinopathy/neuropathy or other vascular disease; or of > 20 years' duration
Endometrial or ovarian cancer
Epilepsy
High blood pressure (systolic >160 mm Hg or diastolic >100 mm Hg)[1]
HIV/AIDS[2]
Ischaemic heart disease
Malignant gestational trophoblastic disease
Malignant liver tumours (hepatoma) and hepatocellular carcinoma of the liver (HCA)
Schistosomiasis with fibrosis of the liver
Severe (decompensated) cirrhosis
Sickle cell disease
STI[2]
Stroke
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
Thrombogenic mutations
Tuberculosis

Notes:

1. Throughout this document, blood pressure measurements are given in mm Hg. To convert to kPa, multiply by 0.1333. For example, 120/80 mm Hg = 16.0/10.7 kPa.
2. Dual protection is strongly recommended for protection against HIV/AIDS and other STIs when a risk of STI/HIV transmission exists. This can be achieved through the simultaneous use of condoms with other methods, or the consistent and correct use of condoms alone.

STIS AND CONTRACEPTION: DUAL PROTECTION

While the development of international norms for contraceptive provision is essential for quality of care in services, the social, cultural and behavioural context of each client must also be considered. In this regard, the problems of exposure to STIs, including HIV, deserve special consideration because of the equal importance of preventing pregnancy and preventing transmission of infection. When a risk of STI/HIV transmission exists, it is important that health-care providers strongly recommend dual protection to all persons at significant risk, either through the simultaneous use of condoms with other methods or through the consistent and correct use of condoms alone for both pregnancy prevention and disease prevention. Women and men seeking contraceptive advice must always be reminded of the importance of condom use for preventing the transmission of STI/HIV and such use should be encouraged and facilitated where appropriate. Male latex condoms are proven to be highly effective against STI/HIV when used consistently and correctly.

METHOD OF WORK

This document builds on a process initiated in 1994 that culminated in the 1996 publication of the document, *Improving access to quality care in family planning: medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use*. In the initial process, which was created to reach agreement on appropriate eligibility criteria for widely used contraceptive methods, a number of agencies and organizations collaborated in an in-depth review of the epidemiological and clinical evidence relevant to medical eligibility criteria of well-established contraceptive methods. The process involved comparing the eligibility criteria used by different agencies for various contraceptives, preparing summaries of published medical and epidemiological literature relevant to medical eligibility criteria, and preparing a draft classification for review by a larger group of experts and agencies. Two expert Working Group meetings were organized by WHO, in March 1994 and May 1995, to review the background classifications and to formulate recommendations; publication of the document followed in 1996.

The first revision of the 1996 document was based on the recommendations of an expert Working Group meeting held at WHO on 8–10 March 2000, that brought together 32 participants from 17 countries, including representatives of many agencies and organizations. The Working Group reviewed new evidence since the last Working Group meetings in 1994 and 1995. This new evidence was primarily obtained from a systematic review of the most recent literature, which was conducted to identify and summarize new evidence for medical eligibility criteria of contraceptive methods.

The second revision of the document was based on the recommendations of an expert Working Group meeting held at WHO on 21–24 October 2003, that brought together 36 participants from 18 countries, including representatives of many agencies and organizations. The Working Group comprised international family planning experts, including clinicians, epidemiologists, policy-makers and programme experts. The Working Group also included experts in evidence identification and synthesis and users of the guideline. A Guideline Steering Group was established for this edition.

This fourth edition of the document is based on the recommendations of an expert Working Group meeting held at WHO on 1–4 April 2008, that brought together 43 participants from 23 countries, including nine agency representatives. The expert Working Group comprised: international family planning experts, including clinicians, epidemiologists, policy-makers, programme managers; experts in evidence identification and synthesis; experts in pharmacology; and users of the guideline. All members of the expert Working Group were asked to declare any conflict of interest; three of the experts declared a conflict of interest relevant to the subject matter of the meeting.[1] They were not asked to withdraw from recommendation formulation.

At the conclusion of the meeting, the expert Working Group was unable to achieve consensus on the safety of using progestogen-only contraception among breastfeeding women less than six weeks postpartum, and the Group determined that additional expertise was necessary prior to revising any recommendations for this condition. Therefore, at the request of the expert Working Group, WHO convened a technical consultation on 22 October 2008 to thoroughly evaluate the evidence surrounding hormonal contraceptive use during lactation and its effects on the neonate. The expert Working Group delegated the responsibility for evaluating the scientific evidence, and developing new recommendations if warranted, to the Guidelines Steering Group. The consultation brought together members of the Guidelines Steering Group and four researchers with expertise on the effects of steroidal compounds on neonatal organ systems and the pharmacology and metabolism of hormones present in breast milk. All participants in the consultation were asked to declare any conflict of interest; one participant declared a conflict of interest relevant to the subject matter.[2] She was not asked to withdraw from recommendation formulation.

Rarely, new evidence will come to light between meetings of the expert Working Group which merits evaluation and potentially, revision of the recommendations contained within the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use*. In these cases, the Guideline Steering Group is tasked with evaluating such evidence, and confirming existing guidance or, if necessary, issuing interim guidance. Following the expert Working Group meeting, WHO became aware of new evidence regarding the risk of venous thromboembolism (VTE) in postpartum women. At the request of the Guideline Steering Group, WHO convened a technical consultation on 26 January 2010 via teleconference to review thoroughly the published evidence in this area. The teleconference brought together members of the Guideline Steering Group and three experts on VTE during the postpartum period. All participants in the consultation were asked to declare any conflict of interest; two participants declared a conflict of interest relevant to the subject matter.[3] They were not asked to withdraw from recommendation formulation.

1 *Dr Glasier:* Works at a clinic that receives research support from four companies that manufacture various contraceptive products. *Dr Shelton:* Has shareholdings in a pharmaceutical company that manufactures antiretroviral therapies. *Dr Weisberg:* Receives funding for contraceptive research from four contraceptive manufacturers; serves on the advisory board of a manufacturer of the vaccine against human papilloma virus and serves on an advisory board for contraceptive education funded by a contraceptive manufacturer.

2 *Dr Glasier:* Works at a clinic that receives research support from four companies that manufacture various contraceptive products.

3 *Dr Glasier:* Works at a clinic that receives research support from four companies that manufacture various contraceptive products. *Dr Hannaford:* Works at an academic centre that has received financial support from two companies that manufacture various contraceptive products.

EVIDENCE IDENTIFICATION AND SYNTHESIS

Using a system that identifies new evidence on an ongoing basis (the Continuous Identification of Research Evidence, or CIRE system),[1] WHO identified recommendations from the third edition of the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use* for which new evidence was available. Systematic reviews were then conducted to appraise the complete body of evidence for those recommendations, as well as for one new medical condition that was added to the recommendations: systemic lupus erythematosus. The purpose of these systematic reviews was to identify direct evidence for the appropriateness of contraceptive method use by women with selected conditions. Information on indirect evidence or theoretical considerations was obtained for these recommendations when direct evidence was sought but not available. To conduct the systematic reviews, studies were identified using the CIRE system as well as through searches of PubMed and *The Cochrane Library* from database inception to January 2008. The search also included reviews of reference lists in articles identified by the literature search and contact with experts in the field. The strength and quality of the evidence was graded using the United States Preventive Task Force system.[2]

The systematic reviews were provided to the expert Working Group prior to the meeting and served as the basis for the Group's deliberations during the meeting. The grading of the evidence was provided to the Working Group as each relevant recommendation was considered. Issues of cost were considered primarily in terms of availability and access to contraceptive services, as well as potential resource constraints. Programmatic implications of the recommendations were also considered by the Working Group. The recommendations primarily concern safety issues and these issues were considered in light of their applicability in a variety of settings. The Group arrived at its recommendations through consensus.

For most recommendations (method/condition combinations), there are a limited number of studies that address the use of a specific method by women with a specific condition. Thus, most of the decisions regarding eligibility criteria using evidence were often necessarily based on extrapolations from studies that primarily included healthy women, as well as on theoretical considerations and expert opinion. Evidence was particularly limited for newer products and for those with limited usage. The total body of evidence considered by the Working Group included:

- evidence based on direct studies or observations of the contraceptive method used by women (or men) with the condition;
- evidence derived from effects of the contraceptive method used by women (or men) without the condition;
- indirect evidence or theoretical concerns based on studies of suitable animal models, human laboratory studies, or analogous clinical situations.

Where the Working Group had a systematic review of the evidence to consider as they made a recommendation, the evidence is cited in this document alongside the recommendation. The recommendations for which no evidence is cited were based on expert opinion and/or evidence obtained from sources other than systematic reviews. As noted below, over 1000 of the recommendations in this edition are unchanged from those made in the first edition. The evidence for the first edition was provided to the 1994 and 1995 Working Groups in a series of background papers prepared for the project.

The third edition included 1705 recommendations. These recommendations are widely used globally and, therefore, WHO determined that any changes should be based on new evidence unless there was a compelling reason to do otherwise. The Guideline Steering Group, which convened on 31 March 2008, proposed that the expert Working Group consider only those recommendations from the third edition for which there was new evidence or for which a compelling case had been made. The Working Group concurred with this proposal on 1 April 2008.

The Working Group was charged with determining the eligibility criteria for each condition and method of contraception by selecting a category (1 through 4, as described below). Where the Working Group determined that guidance in addition to the category was required, that guidance was provided by the Working Group as a "Clarification". Where new evidence was considered by the Working Group, this evidence has been summarized and presented under the heading "Evidence", in the column labelled "Clar-

1 Mohllajee AP, Curtis KM, Flanagan RG, Rinehart W, Gaffield ML, Peterson HB. Keeping up with evidence: a new system for WHO's evidence-based family planning guidance. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine* 2005;28:483-490.

2 Harris RP, Helfand M, Woolf SH, Lohr KN, Mulrow CD, Teutsch SM et al. Current methods of the US Preventive Service Task Force: a review of the process. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine* 2001;20:21-35.

ifications/evidence". In addition to the clarifications of guidance and the summaries of the evidence, comments have been provided at the end of each contraceptive method section by the WHO Secretariat for selected methods/conditions.

The expert Working Group developed 86 new recommendations and revised 165 existing recommendations for the 4th edition of the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use*. As a result of the deliberations by the group, the 4th edition of the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use* will include the medical condition, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) and 12 new subconditions will be added to medical conditions already existing in the 3rd edition. The 12 subconditions are: obesity and <18 years of age; deep venous thrombosis/pulmonary embolism (DVT/PE) and established on anticoagulant therapy; acute or flare for viral hepatitis; focal nodular hyperplasia of the liver; three classes of antiretroviral therapies (nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors [NRTIs], non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors [NNRTIs], ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors [PIs]); lamotrigine (an anticonvulsant); and four classes of antimicrobials (broad-spectrum antibiotics, antifungals, antiparasitics, and rifabutin with rifampicin).

All members of the Guideline Steering Group and the Working Group approved the 1870 recommendations at the completion of the meeting on 4 April 2008.

At the conclusion of the meeting, however, the expert Working Group was unable to achieve consensus on the safety of using progestogen-only contraception among breastfeeding women less than six weeks postpartum, and underscored the need to seek addition expertise prior to revising any recommendations for this condition. Therefore, WHO convened a technical consultation on 22 October 2008 to evaluate thoroughly all scientific evidence on this topic. The consultation brought together members of the Guidelines Steering Group and four researchers with expertise in the following disciplines: neonatology, neurology, neuroscience, and paediatrics. Acting on behalf of the expert Working Group, the Guideline Steering Group determined that the current recommendations for progestogen-use among lactating women during the first six weeks postpartum should remain unchanged at the completion of the consultation on 22 October 2008. These recommendations will be reviewed by the full expert Working Group during the next Working Group meeting.

Through efforts to monitor the publication of new research evidence in order to ensure that the guidance in the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use* is up-to-date, WHO identified new evidence regarding the risk of venous thromboembolism (VTE) in postpartum women, which indicated the need to re-evaluate recommendations for non-breastfeeding women during the first six weeks postpartum. A systematic review of the topic was prepared and sent to the Guideline Steering Group for their appraisal. Further, a systematic review was prepared on the timing of returning fertility in postpartum, non-lactating women. In light of this evidence, the Guideline Steering Group determined that WHO should re-consider its recommendations regarding use of combined hormonal contraceptives during the postpartum period, and requested that the WHO Secretariat convene a technical consultation to address this topic. Therefore, WHO convened a technical consultation on 26 January 2010 via teleconference to thoroughly review the available scientific evidence in the area. Acting on behalf of the expert Working Group, the Guideline Steering Group issued interim guidance, expanding from eight to 20 the recommendations for postpartum, non-breastfeeding women to reflect this evidence.

These recommendations, and the evidence which supported their development, will be reviewed by the full expert Working Group during the next Working Group meeting.

The Guideline Steering Group approved the 20 updated recommendations at the completion of the teleconference on 26 January 2010.

HOW TO USE THIS DOCUMENT

The present document is intended to be used by policy-makers, family planning programme managers and the scientific community. It aims to provide guidance to national family planning/reproductive health programmes in the preparation of guidelines for service delivery of contraceptives. It should not be seen or used as the actual guidelines but rather as a reference.

The guidance in this document is intended for interpretation at country and programme levels in a manner that reflects the diversity of situations and settings in which contraceptives are provided. While it is unlikely that the classification of categories in this document would change during this process, it is very likely that the application of these categories at country level will vary. In particular, the level of clinical knowledge and experience of various types of providers and the resources available at the service delivery point will have to be taken into consideration.

USING THE TABLES

The Working Group addressed medical criteria for the initiation and continuation of use of all methods evaluated. The issue of continuation criteria is clinically relevant whenever a woman develops the condition while she is using the method. When the Working Group determined that categories for initiation and continuation were different, these differences are noted in the columns 'I = initiation' and 'C = continuation'. Where I and C are not denoted, the category is the same for initiation and continuation of use.

On the basis of this classification system, the eligibility criteria for initiating and continuing use of a specific contraceptive method are presented in this document in a set of tables. As shown below, the first column indicates the condition. Several conditions were subdivided to differentiate between varying degrees of the condition. The second column classifies the condition for initiation and/or continuation into one of the four categories described below. If necessary, the third column gives clarification or evidence regarding the classification, as described in the section above.

A summary table is included at the end of the document covering medical eligibility criteria by condition for hormonal methods and IUDs. A summary of the conditions or categories that were revised for this edition is included at the end of this section.

CLASSIFICATION OF CATEGORIES

The medical eligibility criteria in this document were based on the method of work described above and aim to ensure an adequate margin of safety.

Each condition was defined as representing either an individual's characteristics (e.g. age, history of pregnancy) or a known pre-existing medical/pathological condition (e.g. diabetes, hypertension). It is expected that national and institutional health and service delivery environments will decide the most suitable means for screening for conditions according to their public health importance. Client history will often be the most appropriate approach. A family planning provider may want to consult an expert in the underlying condition.

The conditions affecting eligibility for the use of each contraceptive method were classified under one of the following four categories.

USING THE CATEGORIES IN PRACTICE

Categories 1 and 4 are self-explanatory. Classification of a method/condition as Category 2 indicates the method can generally be used, but careful follow-up may be required. However, provision of a method to a woman with a condition classified as Category 3 requires careful clinical judgement and access to clinical services; for such a woman, the severity of the condition and the availability, practicality, and acceptability of alternative methods should be taken into account. For a method/condition classified as Category 3, use of that method is not usually recommended unless other more appropriate methods are not available or acceptable. Careful follow-up will be required.

Where resources for clinical judgement are limited, such as in community-based services, the four-category classification framework can be simplified into two categories. With this simplification, a classification of Category 3 indicates that a woman is not medically eligible to use the method.

PROGRAMMATIC IMPLICATIONS

Programmatic issues that need to be addressed include:

- informed choice
- elements of quality of care
- essential screening procedures for administering the methods
- provider training and skills
- referral and follow-up for contraceptive use as appropriate.

In the application of the eligibility criteria to programmes, service delivery practices that are essential for the safe use of the contraceptive should be distinguished from practices that may be appropriate for good health care but are not related to use of the method. The promotion of good health-care practices unrelated to safe contraception should be considered neither as a prerequisite nor as an obstacle to the provision of a contraceptive method, but as complementary to it.

As a next step, the recommendations on eligibility criteria need to be considered in light of country circumstances, so as to be applicable to providers at all levels of the service delivery system. Countries will need to determine how far and by what means it may be possible to extend their services to the more peripheral levels. This may involve upgrading both staff and facilities where feasible and affordable,

TYPE OF CONTRACEPTIVE		
CONDITION	**CATEGORY** I = initiation C = continuation	**CLARIFICATIONS/ EVIDENCE**
CONDITION	Condition classified from 1 to 4 The categories for fertility awareness-based methods and surgical sterilization are described at the beginning of the relevant section.	Clarifications and evidence regarding the classification

NA denotes a condition for which a category was not given by the Working Group but for which clarifications have been provided.

1	A condition for which there is no restriction for the use of the contraceptive method
2	A condition where the advantages of using the method generally outweigh the theoretical or proven risks
3	A condition where the theoretical or proven risks usually outweigh the advantages of using the method
4	A condition which represents an unacceptable health risk if the contraceptive method is used

CATEGORY	WITH CLINICAL JUDGEMENT	WITH LIMITED CLINICAL JUDGEMENT
1	Use method in any circumstances	**Yes** (Use the method)
2	Generally use the method	
3	Use of method not usually recommended unless other more appropriate methods are not available or not acceptable	**No** (Do not use the method)
4	Method not to be used	

or may require the extension of the skills of certain categories of health personnel or a modest addition of equipment and supplies, and redeployment of space. It will also be necessary to address questions of misperceptions sometimes held by providers and users on the risks and side-effects of the methods and to look closely at the needs and perspectives of women and men in the context of informed choice.

INTRODUCING GUIDELINES INTO NATIONAL PROGRAMMES

When introducing this guidance on the medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use into a sexual and reproductive health-care programme, it is important to consider that this material is not simply a document that must be distributed, but rather it contains health-care practices which must be introduced to providers through a well-planned process of adaptation and implementation.

Guidance for countries on the introduction of sexual and reproductive health guidelines, including those for medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use, is available in the document, *Introducing WHO's sexual and reproductive health guidelines and tools into national programmes*. This document is designed to be used by policy-makers, programme managers, and other health professionals who are embarking on a process to introduce evidence-based practices in sexual and reproductive health into their national or local programmes. Within the document, six overarching principles are recommended for the effective adaptation and implementation of WHO guidance on sexual and reproductive health into a national programme. These principles include: building consensus; building on what exists; identifying possible barriers and facilitating factors; ensuring that adaptations are evidence based; planning scale-up from the beginning; and implementing a range of interventions to change provider practices.

To introduce the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use,* WHO suggests countries or local authorities follow a six-step process. These steps comprise: planning for advocacy; conducting a situation analysis; adapting the guidance to fit a country's needs, circumstances, and context; designing an implementation strategy; pilot testing an evaluation; and, lastly, advocacy and scale-up. This process may vary depending upon whether the guidance is being introduced for the first time, or is being used to update existing service delivery guidelines. Throughout these steps, WHO stresses the importance that the process for introducing guidance is collaborative and participatory to foster ownership and buy-in among policy-makers, professional bodies and other national experts.

CLIENTS WITH SPECIAL NEEDS

People with disabilities

Medical eligibility criteria address contraceptive use by people with specific medical conditions. In addition, contraceptive provision to people with disabilities may require further considerations. Decisions on appropriate contraception must take into account the nature of the disability and the nature of the method, as well as the expressed desires of the individual. For example, some barrier methods may be difficult to use for those with limited manual dexterity; COCs may not be a preferred method for women with impaired circulation or immobile extremities even in the absence of known thrombogenic mutations because of concerns about an increased risk of DVT; and other methods will be preferable for individuals with intellectual or mental health disabilities who have difficulty remembering to take daily medications. For women who have difficulty with menstrual hygiene, the impact of the contraceptive method on menstrual cycles should also be considered.

Decisions must be based upon informed choice, after adequate sexual health education. Where the nature of the impairment does not allow for independent informed choice, contraceptives should be provided only after a process of supported decision-making including the client as well as relevant parties such as a personal ombudsman, support persons or guardians. The reproductive rights of the individual must be upheld in any such decisions. It is especially important to ensure that decisions about sterilization of people with disabilities are made in an ethical manner.

Adolescents

In general, adolescents are eligible to use any method of contraception and must have access to a variety of contraceptive choices. Age alone does not constitute a medical reason for denying any method to adolescents. While some concerns have been expressed regarding the use of certain contraceptive methods in adolescents (e.g. the use of progestogen-only injectables by those below 18 years), these concerns must be balanced against the advantages of avoiding pregnancy. It is clear that many of the same eligibility criteria that apply to older clients apply to young people. However, some conditions (e.g. cardiovascular disorders) that may limit the use of some methods in older women do not generally affect young people, since these conditions are rare in this age group. Social and behavioural issues should be important considerations in the choice of contraceptive methods by adolescents. For example, in some settings, adolescents are also at increased risk for STIs, including HIV. While adolescents may choose to use any one of the contraceptive methods available in their communities, in some cases, using methods that do not require a daily regimen may be more appropriate. Adolescents, married or unmarried, have also been shown to be less tolerant of side-effects and therefore have high discontinuation rates. Method choice may also be influenced by factors such as sporadic patterns of intercourse and the need to conceal sexual activity and contraceptive use. For instance, sexually active adolescents who are unmarried have very different needs from those who are married and want to postpone, space or limit pregnancy. Expanding the number of method choices offered can lead to improved satisfaction, increased acceptance and increased prevalence of contraceptive use. Proper education and counselling both before and at the time of method selection can help adolescents address their specific problems and make informed and voluntary decisions. Every effort should be made to prevent service and method costs from limiting the options available.

SUMMARY OF CHANGES FROM THE THIRD EDITION

A summary of the classification changes or major condition modifications from the third edition is given in Table 3.

It is expected that the recommendations in the 4th edition of the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use* will remain valid until 2012. The Department of Reproductive Health and Research at WHO Headquarters in Geneva will be responsible for initiating a review of the guideline at that time.

Table 3. Summary of changes from the third edition of the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use*
(Conditions for which there was a classification change for one or more methods or a major modification to the condition description. Changed classifications are noted in bold).

CONDITION	COC/P/R	CIC	POP	DMPA NET-EN	LNG/ETG Implants	Cu-IUD	LNG-IUD
I = initiation , **C** = continuation, **BF** = breastfeeding							
POSTPARTUM (non-breastfeeding women)							
a) < 21 days							
(i) without other risk factors for VTE	**3†**	**3†**					
(ii) with other risk factors for VTE	**3/4†**	**3/4†**					
b) ≥ 21 days to 42 days							
(i) without other risk factors for VTE	**2†**	**2†**					
(ii) with other risk factors for VTE	**2/3†**	**2/3†**					
c) > 42 days	**1**	**1**					
POSTPARTUM (breastfeeding or non-breastfeeding women, including post-caesarean section)							
a) < 48 hours **including insertion immediately after delivery of the placenta**						**1**	**1=not BF 3=BF**
b) ≥ 48 hours to < 4 weeks						3	3
c) ≥ 4 weeks						1	1
d) Puerperal sepsis						4	4
OBESITY	2	2	1	1	1	1	1
a) ≥ 30 kg/m^2 body mass index (BMI)							
b) Menarche to < 18 years and ≥ 30 kg/m^2 body mass index (BMI)	2	2	1	**DMPA=2 NET-EN=1†**	1	1	1
DEEP VENOUS THROMBOSIS (DVT)/ PULMONARY EMBOLISM (PE)							
a) History of DVT/PE	4	4	2	2	2	1	2
b) **Acute** DVT/PE	4	4	3	3	3	1	3
c) DVT/PE and established on anti-coagulant therapy	**4**	**4**	**2**	**2**	**2**	**1**	**2**
d) Family history (first-degree relatives)	2	2	1	1	1	1	1
e) Major surgery							
(i) with prolonged immobilization	4	4	2	2	2	1	2
(ii) without prolonged immobilization	2	2	1	1	1	1	1
f) Minor surgery without immobilization	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

† Please consult the relevant method chapter for clarification for this classification.

CONDITION	COC/P/R	CIC	POP	DMPA NET-EN	LNG/ETG Implants	Cu-IUD	LNG-IUD
I = initiation , **C** = continuation, **BF** = breastfeeding							
SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS (SLE)				I / C		I / C	
People with SLE are at increased risk of ischaemic heart disease, stroke and venous thromboembolism. Categories assigned to such conditions in this guidance should be the same for women with SLE who present with these conditions. For all categories of SLE, classifications are based on the assumption that no other risk factors for cardiovascular disease are present; these classifications must be modified in the presence of such risk factors.							
a) Positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies	**4**	**4**	**3**	**3 / 3**	**3**	**1 / 1**	**3**
b) Severe thrombocytopenia	**2**	**2**	**2**	**3 / 2**	**2**	**3† / 2†**	**2†**
c) Immunosuppressive treatment	**2**	**2**	**2**	**2 / 2**	**2**	**2 / 1**	**2**
d) None of the above	**2**	**2**	**2**	**2 / 2**	**2**	**1 / 1**	**2**
GESTATIONAL TROPHOBLASTIC DISEASE							
a) Decreasing or undetectable β-hCG (human chorionic gonadotropin) levels	1	1	1	1	1	3	3
b) Persistently elevated β-hCG levels or malignant disease	1	1	1	1	1	4	4
VIRAL HEPATITIS	I / C	I / C					
a) Acute or flare	**3/4† / 2**	**3 / 2**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
b) Carrier	**1 / 1**	**1 / 1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
c) Chronic	**1 / 1**	**1 / 1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
CIRRHOSIS							
a) Mild (compensated)	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
b) Severe (decompensated)	4	3	3	3	3	1	3
LIVER TUMOURS							
a) Benign							
i) Focal nodular hyperplasia	**2**	**2**	**2**	**2**	**2**	**1**	**2**
ii) Hepatocellular adenoma	4	3	3	3	3	1	3
b) Malignant (hepatoma)	4	3/4	3	3	3	1	3
ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY						I / C	I / C
a) Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs)	**1†**	**1**	**1**	**DMPA=1 NET-EN=1**	**1**	**2/3† / 2†**	**2/3† / 2†**
b) Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs)	**2†**	**2†**	**2†**	**DMPA=1 NET-EN=2†**	**2†**	**2/3† / 2†**	**2/3† / 2†**
c) Ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors	**3†**	**3†**	**3†**	**DMPA=1 NET-EN=2†**	**2†**	**2/3† / 2†**	**2/3† / 2†**
ANTICONVULSANT THERAPY							
a) Certain anticonvulsants (phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine)	3†	2	3†	**DMPA=1 NET-EN=2†**	**2†**	1	1
b) Lamotrigine	**3†**	**3**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
ANTIMICROBIAL THERAPY							
a) Broad-spectrum antibiotics	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
b) Antifungals	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
c) Antiparasitics	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
d) Rifampicin **or rifabutin therapy**	3†	2	3†	**DMPA=1 NET-EN=2†**	**2†**	1	1

† Please consult the relevant method chapter for clarification for this classification.

COMBINED ORAL CONTRACEPTIVES (COCS)

Low-dose combined oral contraceptives (COCs) $\leq$ 35 µg of ethinylestradiol.

COMBINED INJECTABLE CONTRACEPTIVES (CICS)

Combined injectable contraceptives (CICs) provide for the release of a natural estrogen plus a progestogen and act through the inhibition of ovulation.(1-5) Two CIC formulations, both given at four-week intervals, are considered here:

1) Cyclofem = medroxyprogesterone acetate 25 mg plus estradiol cypionate 5 mg

2) Mesigyna = norethisterone enantate 50 mg plus estradiol valerate 5 mg

CICs contain the naturally occurring estrogen, estradiol. Estradiol is less potent, has a shorter duration of effect and is more rapidly metabolized than the synthetic estrogens used in other contraceptive formulations such as combined oral contraceptives (COCs), combined contraceptive patch (P) and combined contraceptive ring (R). These differences imply that the type and magnitude of estrogen-related side-effects associated with CICs may be different from those experienced by COC/P/R users. In fact, short-term studies of CICs have shown little effect on blood pressure, haemostasis and coagulation, lipid metabolism, and liver function in comparison with COCs.(6-8) As CICs are administered by injection, the first-pass metabolism by the liver is avoided, thereby minimizing estradiol's effect on the liver.

However, CICs are a relatively new contraceptive method, and there are few epidemiological data on their long-term effects. There is also the concern that, while the effect of the hormonal exposure associated with use of COCs and progestogen-only pills (POPs) can be reduced immediately by discontinuing their use, this is not the case with injectables, for which the effect continues for some time after the last injection.

Pending further evidence, the Working Group concluded that the evidence available for COCs applies to CICs in many but not all instances. Therefore, the Working Group assigned categories for CICs somewhere between the categories for COCs and POPs. However, for severe pathologies (e.g. ischaemic heart disease), the classification of conditions was the same as for COCs. The assigned categories should, therefore, be considered a preliminary, best judgement, which will be re-evaluated as new data become available.

COMBINED CONTRACEPTIVE PATCH (P) AND COMBINED CONTRACEPTIVE VAGINAL RING (R)

The combined contraceptive patch and vaginal ring are relatively new contraceptive methods. Limited information is available on the safety of these methods among women with specific medical conditions. Moreover, epidemiological data on the long-term effects of the combined contraceptive patch or the vaginal ring were not available for the Working Group to review. Most of the available studies received support from the manufacturers of these methods.

According to available evidence, the combined contraceptive patch provides a comparable safety and pharmacokinetic profile to COCs with similar hormone formulations.(9-26) Reports of transient, short-term breast discomfort and skin-site reactions were greater among combined contraceptive patch users; however less than 25% of users experienced these events.(11;15;16;22-24;27) Limited evidence suggests the effectiveness of the patch may decline for women weighing 90 kg or more.(24;26)

According to available evidence, the combined contraceptive vaginal ring provides a comparable safety and pharmacokinetic profile and has similar effects on ovarian function to COCs with similar hormone formulations in healthy women.(27-41) Evidence on obese women (BMI $\geq$ 30 kg/m^2) found that weight gain for women in this category was not different between users of the vaginal ring compared with users of COCs.(42) Limited evidence on women post medical and surgical abortion found no serious adverse events and no infection related to use during three cycles of follow-up post-abortion,(43) and limited evidence on women with low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions found that use of the vaginal ring did not worsen the condition.(30)

Pending further evidence, the Working Group concluded that the evidence available for COCs applies to the combined contraceptive patch and vaginal ring. Therefore, the patch and ring should have the same categories as COCs. The assigned categories should, therefore, be considered a preliminary, best judgement, which will be re-evaluated as new data become available.

COMBINED HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES (CHCs)

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC	P	R	CIC	
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives					
PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS AND REPRODUCTIVE HISTORY					
PREGNANCY	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA = not applicable **Clarification**: Use of COCs, P, R or CICs is not required. There is no known harm to the woman, the course of her pregnancy, or the fetus if COCs, P, R or CICs are accidentally used during pregnancy.
AGE*					**Evidence**: Adolescents using 20 µg ethinylestradiol-containing COCs have lower bone mineral density (BMD) when compared to non-users, while higher-dose ethinylestradiol-containing COCs have little to no effect.(44-51) In premenopausal adult women, combined hormonal contraceptive use has little to no effect on bone health, while appearing to preserve bone mass in the perimenopause.(35;52-100) Postmenopausal women who have ever used COCs have similar BMD to women who have never used COCs. (64;68;78;91;101-120) BMD in adolescent or premenopausal women may not accurately predict postmenopausal fracture risk. (119;121-132)
a) Menarche to < 40 years	1	1	1	1	
b) ≥ 40 years	2	2	2	2	
PARITY					
a) Nulliparous	1	1	1	1	
b) Parous	1	1	1	1	
BREASTFEEDING					**Evidence**: Clinical studies demonstrate conflicting results regarding effects on milk volume in women exposed to COCs during lactation; however, no consistent effects on infant weight have been reported.(133-142) Adverse health outcomes or manifestations of exogenous estrogen in infants exposed to combined contraceptives through breast milk have not been demonstrated; however, studies have been inadequately designed to determine whether a risk of either serious or subtle long-term effects exists.
a) < 6 weeks postpartum	4	4	4	4	
b) ≥ 6 weeks to < 6 months postpartum (primarily breastfeeding)	3	3	3	3	
c) ≥ 6 months postpartum	2	2	2	2	

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC	P	R	CIC	
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives					
POSTPARTUM (in non-breastfeeding women) Although the risk of VTE is the same in breastfeeding as non-breastfeeding women, use of CHCs is generally not recommended prior to 6 months postpartum in women who are breastfeeding.					
a) < 21 days*					**Clarification**: For women up to 6 weeks postpartum with other risk factors for VTE, such as previous VTE, thrombophilia, immobility, transfusion at delivery, BMI > 30 kg/m^2, postpartum haemorrhage, immediately post-caesarean delivery, pre-eclampsia or smoking, use of combined hormonal contraceptives may pose an additional increased risk of VTE. The category should be assessed according to the number, severity and combination of VTE risk factors present. Because each women is unique with respect to her personal risk profile, clinical judgment will be necessary to determine if she may safely use CHCs. **Evidence**:There is no direct evidence examining the risk of VTE among postpartum women using CHCs. VTE risk is elevated during pregnancy and the postpartum; this risk is most pronounced in the first weeks after delivery, declining to near baseline levels by 42 days postpartum. Use of CHCs, which increases the risk of VTE in healthy reproductive age women, may pose an additional risk if used during this time. (143-160) **Evidence**:Risk of pregnancy during the first 21 days postpartum is very low, but increases after that point; ovulation before first menses is common.(161-165)
i) without other risk factors for VTE	3	3	3	3	
ii) with other risk factors for VTE	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	
b) ≥ 21 days to 42 days					
i) without other risk factors for VTE	2	2	2	2	
ii) with other risk factors for VTE	2/3	2/3	2/3	2/3	
c) >42 days	1	1	1	1	
POST-ABORTION					**Clarification**: COCs, P, R or CICs may be started immediately post-abortion. **Evidence**: Women who started taking COCs immediately after first-trimester medical or surgical abortion did not experience more side-effects or adverse vaginal bleeding outcomes or clinically significant changes in coagulation parameters compared with women who used a placebo, an IUD, a non-hormonal contraceptive method, or delayed COC initiation.(166-173) Limited evidence on women using the ring immediately after first-trimester medical or surgical abortion found no serious adverse events and no infection related to use of the combined vaginal contraceptive ring during three cycles of follow-up post-abortion.(43)
a) First trimester	1	1	1	1	
b) Second trimester	1	1	1	1	
c) Immediate post-septic abortion	1	1	1	1	

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC	P	R	CIC	
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives					
PAST ECTOPIC PREGNANCY*	1	1	1	1	
HISTORY OF PELVIC SURGERY	1	1	1	1	
SMOKING					**Evidence**: COC users who smoked were at increased risk of cardiovascular diseases, especially myocardial infarction, compared with those who did not smoke. Studies also showed an increased risk of myocardial infarction with increasing number of cigarettes smoked per day.(174-185)
a) Age < 35 years	2	2	2	2	
b) Age ≥ 35 years					
(i) < 15 cigarettes/day	3	3	3	2	
ii) ≥ 15 cigarettes/day	4	4	4	3	
OBESITY					**Evidence**: Obese women who use COCs are more likely to experience venous thromboembolism than obese women who do not use COCs. The absolute risk of venous thromboembolism in healthy women of reproductive age is small. Limited evidence suggests that obese women who use COCs do not have a higher risk of acute myocardial infarction or stroke than obese non-users.(179;185-191) Limited evidence is inconsistent regarding whether COC effectiveness varies by body weight or BMI. (169-174) Limited evidence suggests obese women are no more likely to gain weight after three cycles of the vaginal ring or COCs than overweight or normal weight women. A similar weight gain during the three months was noted between the COC group and the vaginal ring group across all BMI categories.(198) The effectiveness of the patch decreased among women who weighed > 90 kg; however, no association was found between pregnancy risk and BMI.(26)
a) ≥ 30 kg/m^2 BMI	2	2	2	2	
b) Menarche to < 18 years and ≥ 30 kg/m^2 BMI	2	2	2	2	
BLOOD PRESSURE MEASUREMENT UNAVAILABLE	NA	NA	NA	NA	**Clarification**: It is desirable to have blood pressure measurements taken before initiation of COC, P, R or CIC use. However, in some settings, blood pressure measurements are unavailable. In many of these settings, pregnancy morbidity and mortality risks are high, and COCs, P, R or CICs may be one of the few methods widely available. In such settings, women should not be denied use of COCs, P, R or CICs simply because their blood pressure cannot be measured.
CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE					
MULTIPLE RISK FACTORS FOR ARTERIAL CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE (such as older age, smoking, diabetes and hypertension)	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	**Clarification**: When a woman has multiple major risk factors, any of which alone would substantially increase the risk of cardiovascular disease, use of COCs, P, R or CICs may increase her risk to an unacceptable level. However, a simple addition of categories for multiple risk factors is not intended; for example, a combination of two risk factors assigned a category 2 may not necessarily warrant a higher category.

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC	P	R	CIC	
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives					
HYPERTENSION For all categories of hypertension, classifications are based on the assumption that no other risk factors for cardiovascular disease exist. When multiple risk factors do exist, the risk of cardiovascular disease may increase substantially. A single reading of blood pressure level is not sufficient to classify a woman as hypertensive.					
a) History of hypertension, where blood pressure CANNOT be evaluated (including hypertension in pregnancy)	3	3	3	3	**Clarification**: Evaluation of cause and level of hypertension is recommended, as soon as feasible. **Evidence**: Women who did not have a blood pressure check before COC use had an increased risk of acute myocardial infarction and stroke.(199-203)
b) Adequately controlled hypertension, where blood pressure CAN be evaluated	3	3	3	3	**Clarification**: Women adequately treated for hypertension are at reduced risk of acute myocardial infarction and stroke as compared with untreated women. Although there are no data, COC, P, R or CIC users with adequately controlled and monitored hypertension should be at reduced risk of acute myocardial infarction and stroke compared with untreated hypertensive COC, P, R or CIC users.
c) Elevated blood pressure levels (properly taken measurements)					**Evidence**: Among women with hypertension, COC users were at increased risk of stroke, acute myocardial infarction, and peripheral arterial disease compared with non-users.(174;176;183-185;187;199-214) Discontinuation of COCs in women with hypertension may improve blood pressure control.(215)
(i) systolic 140-159 or diastolic 90-99 mm Hg	3	3	3	3	
(ii) systolic ≥160 or diastolic ≥100 mm Hg	4	4	4	4	
d) Vascular disease	4	4	4	4	
HISTORY OF HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE DURING PREGNANCY (where current blood pressure is measurable and normal)	2	2	2	2	**Evidence**: Women who had a history of high blood pressure in pregnancy, who also used COCs, had an increased risk of myocardial infarction and venous thromboembolism, compared with COC users who did not have a history of high blood pressure during pregnancy. The absolute risks of acute myocardial infarction and venous thromboembolism in this population remained small.(185;201-203;205;216-221)
DEEP VENOUS THROMBOSIS (DVT)/ PULMONARY EMBOLISM (PE)*					
a) History of DVT/PE	4	4	4	4	
b) Acute DVT/PE	4	4	4	4	
c) DVT/PE and established on anticoagulant therapy	4	4	4	4	
d) Family history (first-degree relatives)	2	2	2	2	
e) Major surgery					
(i) with prolonged immobilization	4	4	4	4	
(ii) without prolonged immobilization	2	2	2	2	
f) Minor surgery without immobilization	1	1	1	1	

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC	P	R	CIC	
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives					
KNOWN THROMBOGENIC MUTATIONS (e.g. factor V Leiden; prothrombin mutation; protein S, protein C, and antithrombin deficiencies)	4	4	4	4	**Clarification**: Routine screening is not appropriate because of the rarity of the conditions and the high cost of screening. **Evidence**: Among women with thrombogenic mutations, COC users had a two to twenty-fold higher risk of thrombosis than non-users. (191;222-244)
SUPERFICIAL VENOUS THROMBOSIS*					
a) Varicose veins	1	1	1	1	
b) Superficial thrombophlebitis	2	2	2	2	
CURRENT AND HISTORY OF ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE	4	4	4	4	
STROKE (history of cerebrovascular accident)	4	4	4	4	
KNOWN HYPERLIPIDAEMIAS	2/3	2/3	2/3	2/3	**Clarification**: Routine screening is not appropriate because of the rarity of the conditions and the high cost of screening. While some types of hyperlipidaemias are risk factors for vascular disease, the category should be assessed according to the type, its severity, and the presence of other cardiovascular risk factors.
VALVULAR HEART DISEASE*					
a) Uncomplicated	2	2	2	2	
b) Complicated (pulmonary hypertension, risk of atrial fibrillation, history of subacute bacterial endocarditis)	4	4	4	4	
RHEUMATIC DISEASES					
SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS (SLE) People with SLE are at increased risk of ischaemic heart disease, stroke and venous thromboembolism. Categories assigned to such conditions in the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use* should be the same for women with SLE who present with these conditions. For all categories of SLE, classifications are based on the assumption that no other risk factors for cardiovascular disease are present; these classifications must be modified in the presence of such risk factors. Available evidence indicates that many women with SLE can be considered good candidates for most contraceptive methods, including hormonal contraceptives.(245-263)					
a) Positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies	4	4	4	4	**Evidence**: Antiphospholipid antibodies are associated with a higher risk for both arterial and venous thrombosis.(264-266)
b) Severe thrombocytopenia	2	2	2	2	
c) Immunosuppressive treatment	2	2	2	2	
d) None of the above	2	2	2	2	

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation								CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC		P		R		CIC		
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives									
NEUROLOGIC CONDITIONS									
HEADACHES*	I	C	I	C	I	C	I	C	**Clarification**: Classification depends on accurate diagnosis of those severe headaches that are migrainous and those that are not. Any new headaches or marked changes in headaches should be evaluated. Classification is for women without any other risk factors for stroke. Risk of stroke increases with age, hypertension and smoking. **Evidence**: Among women with migraine, women who also had aura had a higher risk of stroke than those without aura.(267-269) Women with a history of migraine who use COCs are about two to four times as likely to have an ischaemic stroke as non-users with a history of migraine.(174;189;210;211;268-273)
a) Non-migrainous (mild or severe)	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	
b) Migraine									
(i) without aura									
Age < 35 years	2	3	2	3	2	3	2	3	
Age ≥ 35 years	3	4	3	4	3	4	3	4	
(ii) with aura, at any age	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	
EPILEPSY	1		1		1		1		**Clarification**: If a woman is taking anticonvulsants, refer to the section on drug interactions. Certain anticonvulsants lower COC effectiveness. The extent to which P, R or CIC use is similar to COC use in this regard remains unclear.
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS									
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS	1		1		1		1		**Clarification**: The classification is based on data for women with selected depressive disorders. No data on bipolar disorder or postpartum depression were available. There is a potential for drug interactions between certain antidepressant medications and hormonal contraceptives. **Evidence**: COC use did not increase depressive symptoms in women with depression compared to baseline or to non-users with depression.(274-283)
REPRODUCTIVE TRACT INFECTIONS AND DISORDERS									
VAGINAL BLEEDING PATTERNS*									
a) Irregular pattern without heavy bleeding	1		1		1		1		
b) Heavy or prolonged bleeding (includes regular and irregular patterns)	1		1		1		1		**Clarification**: Unusually heavy bleeding should raise the suspicion of a serious underlying condition. **Evidence**: A Cochrane Collaboration review identified one randomized controlled trial evaluating the effectiveness of COC use compared with naproxen and danazol in treating menorrhagic women. Women with menorrhagia did not report worsening of the condition or any adverse events related to COC use.(284)

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC	P	R	CIC	
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives					
UNEXPLAINED VAGINAL BLEEDING* (suspicious for serious condition) Before evaluation	2	2	2	2	**Clarification**: If pregnancy or an underlying pathological condition (such as pelvic malignancy) is suspected, it must be evaluated and the category adjusted after evaluation.
ENDOMETRIOSIS	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: A Cochrane Collaboration review identified one randomized controlled trial evaluating the effectiveness of COC use compared with a gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) analogue in treating the symptoms of endometriosis. Women with endometriosis did not report worsening of the condition or any adverse events related to COC use.(285)
BENIGN OVARIAN TUMOURS (including cysts)	1	1	1	1	
SEVERE DYSMENORRHOEA	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: There was no increased risk of side-effects with COC use among women with dysmenorrhoea compared with women not using COCs. Some COC users had a reduction in pain and bleeding.(286;287)
GESTATIONAL TROPHOBLASTIC DISEASE a) Decreasing or undetectable β-hCG levels b) Persistently elevated β-hCG levels or malignant disease	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 1	**Evidence**: Following molar pregnancy evacuation, the balance of evidence found COC use did not increase the risk of post-molar trophoblastic disease, and some COC users experienced a more rapid regression in hCG levels, compared with non-users. (288-295) Limited evidence suggests that use of COCs during chemotherapeutic treatment does not significantly affect the regression or treatment of post-molar trophoblastic disease compared with women who used a non-hormonal contraceptive method or DMPA during chemotherapeutic treatment.(296)
CERVICAL ECTROPION*	1	1	1	1	
CERVICAL INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA (CIN)	2	2	2	2	**Evidence**: Among women with persistent Human papilloma virus (HPV) infection, long-term COC use (≥ 5 years) may increase the risk of carcinoma in situ and invasive carcinoma.(30;297) Limited evidence on women with low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions found use of the vaginal ring did not worsen the condition.(30)
CERVICAL CANCER* (awaiting treatment)	2	2	2	2	

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC	P	R	CIC	
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives					
BREAST DISEASE*					
a) Undiagnosed mass	2	2	2	2	**Clarification**: Evaluation should be pursued as early as possible.
b) Benign breast disease	1	1	1	1	
c) Family history of cancer	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Women with breast cancer susceptibility genes (such as *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*) have a higher baseline risk of breast cancer than women without these genes. The baseline risk of breast cancer is also higher among women with a family history of breast cancer than among those who do not have such a history. Current evidence, however, does not suggest that the increased risk of breast cancer among women with either a family history of breast cancer or breast cancer susceptibility genes is modified by the use of combined oral contraceptives. (298-321)
d) Breast cancer					
(i) current	4	4	4	4	
(ii) past and no evidence of current disease for 5 years	3	3	3	3	
ENDOMETRIAL CANCER*	1	1	1	1	
OVARIAN CANCER*	1	1	1	1	
UTERINE FIBROIDS*					
a) Without distortion of the uterine cavity	1	1	1	1	
b) With distortion of the uterine cavity	1	1	1	1	
PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)*					
a) Past PID (assuming no current risk factors for STIs)					
(i) with subsequent pregnancy	1	1	1	1	
(ii) without subsequent pregnancy	1	1	1	1	
b) PID - current	1	1	1	1	

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC	P	R	CIC	
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives					
STIs					
a) Current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonorrhoea	1	1	1	1	
b) Other STIs (excluding HIV and hepatitis)	1	1	1	1	
c) Vaginitis (including trichomonas vaginalis and bacterial vaginosis)	1	1	1	1	
d) Increased risk of STIs	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Evidence suggests that there may be an increased risk of chlamydial cervicitis among COC users at high risk of STIs. For other STIs, there is either evidence of no association between COC use and STI acquisition or too limited evidence to draw any conclusions.(317-397)
HIV/AIDS					
HIGH RISK OF HIV	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: The balance of the evidence suggests no association between oral contraceptive use and HIV acquisition, although studies conducted among higher-risk populations have reported inconsistent findings.(398-436)
HIV INFECTED	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Most studies suggest no increased risk of HIV disease progression with hormonal contraceptive use, as measured by changes in CD4 cell count, viral load or survival. Studies observing that women with HIV who use hormonal contraception have increased risks of acquiring STIs are generally consistent with reports among uninfected women. One direct study found no association between hormonal contraceptive use and an increased risk of HIV transmission to uninfected partners; several indirect studies reported mixed results regarding whether hormonal contraception is associated with an increased risk of HIV-1 DNA or RNA shedding from the genital tract. (437-454)
AIDS	1	1	1	1	**Clarification**: Because there may be drug interactions between hormonal contraceptives and antiretroviral (ARV) therapy, refer to the section on drug interactions.
OTHER INFECTIONS					
SCHISTOSOMIASIS					
a) Uncomplicated	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Among women with uncomplicated schistosomiasis, COC use had no adverse effects on liver function.(455-461)
b) Fibrosis of the liver (if severe, see cirrhosis)	1	1	1	1	

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC	P	R	CIC	
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives					
TUBERCULOSIS					**Clarification**: If a woman is taking rifampicin, refer to the section on drug interactions. Rifampicin is likely to decrease COC effectiveness. The extent to which P or R use is similar to COC use in this regard remains unclear.
a) Non-pelvic	1	1	1	1	
a) Pelvic	1	1	1	1	
MALARIA	1	1	1	1	
ENDOCRINE CONDITIONS					
DIABETES					
a) History of gestational disease	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: The development of non-insulin-dependent diabetes in women with a history of gestational diabetes is not increased by the use of COCs.(462-469) Likewise, lipid levels appear to be unaffected by COC use. (470-472)
b) Non-vascular disease					**Evidence**: Among women with insulin or non-insulin-dependent diabetes, COC use had limited effect on daily insulin requirements and no effect on long-term diabetes control (e.g. haemoglobin A_{1c} levels) or progression to retinopathy. Changes in lipid profile and haemostatic markers were limited and most changes remained within normal values. (473-482)
(i) non-insulin dependent	2	2	2	2	
(ii) insulin dependent	2	2	2	2	
c) Nephropathy/retinopathy/ neuropathy	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	**Clarification**: The category should be assessed according to the severity of the condition.
d) Other vascular disease or diabetes of > 20 years' duration	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	**Clarification**: The category should be assessed according to the severity of the condition.
THYROID DISORDERS					
a) Simple goitre	1	1	1	1	
b) Hyperthyroid	1	1	1	1	
c) Hypothyroid	1	1	1	1	
GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS					
GALL BLADDER DISEASE*					
a) Symptomatic					
(i) treated by cholecystectomy	2	2	2	2	
(ii) medically treated	3	3	3	2	
(iii) current	3	3	3	2	
b) Asymptomatic	2	2	2	2	
HISTORY OF CHOLESTASIS*					
a) Pregnancy related	2	2	2	2	
b) Past-COC related	3	3	3	2	

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation								CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC		P		R		CIC		
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives									
VIRAL HEPATITIS	I	C	I	C	I	C	I	C	
a) Acute or flare	3/4	2	3/4	2	3/4	2	3	2	**Clarification**: The category should be assessed according to the severity of the condition.
b) Carrier	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Data suggest that in women with chronic hepatitis, COC use does not increase the rate or severity of cirrhotic fibrosis, nor does it increase the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma.(483;484) For women who are carriers, COC use does not appear to trigger liver failure or severe dysfunction.(485-487) Evidence is limited for COC use during active hepatitis.(488;489)
c) Chronic	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
CIRRHOSIS									
a) Mild (compensated)	1		1		1		1		
b) Severe (decompensated)	4		4		4		3		
LIVER TUMOURS*									
a) Benign									
(i) Focal nodular hyperplasia	2		2		2		2		**Evidence**: There is limited, direct evidence that hormonal contraceptive use does not influence either progression or regression of liver lesions among women with focal nodular hyperplasia.(490-492)
(ii) Hepatocellular adenoma	4		4		4		3		
b) Malignant (hepatoma)	4		4		4		3/4		
ANAEMIAS									
THALASSAEMIA*	1		1		1		1		
SICKLE CELL DISEASE	2		2		2		2		
IRON-DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA*	1		1		1		1		
DRUG INTERACTIONS									
ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY									**Clarification**: Antiretroviral drugs have the potential to either decrease or increase the bioavailability of steroid hormones in hormonal contraceptives. Limited data (summarized in Annex 1) suggest potential drug interactions between many antiretroviral drugs (particularly some NNRTIs and ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors) and hormonal contraceptives. These interactions may alter the safety and effectiveness of both the hormonal contraceptive and the antiretroviral drug. Thus, if a woman on antiretroviral treatment decides to initiate or continue hormonal contraceptive use, the consistent use of condoms is recommended. This is both for preventing HIV transmission and to compensate for any possible reduction in the effectiveness of the hormonal contraceptive. When a COC is chosen, a preparation containing a minimum of 30 µg ethinylestradiol (EE) should be used.
a) Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs)	1		1		1		1		
b) Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs)	2		2		2		2		
c) Ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors	3		3		3		3		

COCs, P, R, CICs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	COC	P	R	CIC	
COC = combined oral contraceptives **P** = combined contraceptive patch **R** = combined contraceptive vaginal ring **CIC** = combined injectable contraceptives					
ANTICONVULSANT THERAPY					
a) Certain anticonvulsants (phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine)	3	3	3	2	**Clarification**: Although the interaction of certain anticonvulsants with COCs, P or R is not harmful to women, it is likely to reduce the effectiveness of COCs, P or R. Use of other contraceptives should be encouraged for women who are long-term users of any of these drugs. When a COC is chosen, a preparation containing a minimum of 30 µg of EE should be used. **Evidence**: Use of certain anticonvulsants may decrease the effectiveness of COCs.(493-496)
b) Lamotrigine	3	3	3	3	**Clarification**: The recommendation for lamotrigine does not apply when lamotrigine is already being taken with other drugs that strongly inhibit (such as sodium valproate) or induce (such as carbamazepine) its metabolism, since, in these cases, the moderate effect of the combined contraceptive is unlikely to be apparent. **Evidence**: Pharmacokinetic studies show levels of lamotrigine decrease significantly during COC use and increase significantly during the pill-free interval.(497-501) Some women who used both COCs and lamotrigine experienced increased seizure activity in one trial.(497)
ANTIMICROBIAL THERAPY					
a) Broad-spectrum antibiotics	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Most broad-spectrum antibiotics do not affect the contraceptive effectiveness of COCs(502-538), P(539), or R.(540)
b) Antifungals	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Studies of antifungal agents have shown no clinically significant pharmacokinetic interactions with COCs(541-550) or R.(551)
c) Antiparasitics	1	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Studies of antiparasitic agents have shown no clinically significant pharmacokinetic interactions with COCs. (455;552-556)
d) Rifampicin or rifabutin therapy	3	3	3	2	**Clarification**: Although the interaction of rifampicin or rifabutin therapy with COCs, P, R or CICs is not harmful to women, it is likely to reduce the effectiveness of COCs, P, R or CICs. Use of other contraceptives should be encouraged for women who are long-term users of either of these drugs. When a COC is chosen, a preparation containing a minimum of 30 µg EE should be used. **Evidence**: The balance of the evidence suggests that rifampicin reduces the effectiveness of COCs.(557-572) Data on rifabutin are limited, but effects on metabolism of COCs are less than with rifampicin, and small studies have not shown evidence of ovulation.(559;566)

ADDITONAL COMMENTS

AGE

≥ **40 years:** the risk of cardiovascular disease increases with age and may also increase with combined hormonal contraceptive use. In the absence of other adverse clinical conditions, combined hormonal contraceptives can be used until menopause.

POSTPARTUM

< **21 days:** there is some theoretical concern regarding the association between combined hormonal contraceptive use up to three weeks postpartum and risk of thrombosis in the mother. Blood coagulation and fibrinolysis are essentially normalized by three weeks postpartum.

PAST ECTOPIC PREGNANCY

The risk of future ectopic pregnancy is increased among women who have had an ectopic pregnancy in the past. Combined hormonal contraceptives provide protection against pregnancy in general, including ectopic gestation.

DEEP VEIN THROMBOSIS/PULMONARY EMBOLISM

Family history of DVT/PE (first-degree relatives): some conditions which increase the risk of DT/PE are heritable.

SUPERFICIAL VENOUS THROMBOSIS

Varicose veins: varicose veins are not risk factors for DVT/PE.

VALVULAR HEART DISEASE

Among women with valvular heart disease, combined hormonal contraceptive use may further increase the risk of arterial thrombosis; women with complicated valvular heart disease are at greatest risk.

HEADACHES

Aura is a specific focal neurologic symptom. For more information on this and other diagnostic criteria, see: Headache Classification Subcommittee of the International Headache Society. The International Classification of Headache Disorders, 2nd edition. *Cephalalgia*. 2004;24(Suppl 1):1-150. http://ihs-classification.org/en/02_klassifikation (accessed 21 Aug 2009).

VAGINAL BLEEDING PATTERNS

Irregular menstrual bleeding patterns are common among healthy women.

UNEXPLAINED VAGINAL BLEEDING

There are no conditions that cause vaginal bleeding that will be worsened in the short term by use of combined hormonal contraceptives.

CERVICAL ECTROPION

Cervical ectropion is not a risk factor for cervical cancer, and there is no need for restriction of combined hormonal contraceptive use.

CERVICAL CANCER (AWAITING TREATMENT)

There is some theoretical concern that combined hormonal contraceptive use may affect prognosis of the existing disease. While awaiting treatment, women may use combined hormonal contraceptives. In general, treatment of this condition renders a woman sterile.

BREAST DISEASE

Breast cancer: breast cancer is a hormonally sensitive tumour, and the prognosis of women with current or recent breast cancer may worsen with combined hormonal contraceptive use.

ENDOMETRIAL CANCER

COC use reduces the risk of developing endometrial cancer. While awaiting treatment, women may use COCs, CICs, P or R. In general, treatment of this condition renders a woman sterile.

OVARIAN CANCER

COC use reduces the risk of developing ovarian cancer. While awaiting treatment, women may use COCs, CICs, P or R. In general, treatment of this condition renders a woman sterile.

UTERINE FIBROIDS

COCs do not appear to cause growth of uterine fibroids, and CICs, P and R are not expected to either.

PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)

COCs may reduce the risk of PID among women with STIs, but do not protect against HIV or lower genital tract STIs. Whether CICs, P or R reduce the risk of PID among women with STIs is unknown but they do not protect against HIV or lover genital tract STIs.

GALL BLADDER DISEASE

COCs, CICs, P or R may cause a small increased risk of gall bladder disease. There is also concern that COCs, CICs, P or R may worsen existing gall bladder disease. However, unlike COCs, CICs have been shown to have minimal effect on liver function in healthy women, and have no first-pass effect on the liver.

HISTORY OF CHOLESTASIS

Pregnancy related: history of pregnancy-related cholestasis may predict an increased risk of developing COC-related cholestasis.

HISTORY OF CHOLESTASIS

Past-COC related: history of COC related cholestasis predicts an increased risk with subsequent COC use.

LIVER TUMOURS

There is no evidence regarding hormonal contraceptive use among women with hepatocellular adenoma. COC use in healthy women is associated with development and growth of hepatocellular adenoma.

THALASSAEMIA

There is anecdotal evidence from countries where thalassaemia is prevalent that COC use does not worsen the condition.

IRON-DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA

Combined hormonal contraceptive use may decrease menstrual blood loss.

REFERENCE LIST

(1) Aedo AR, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamic investigations with monthly injectable contraceptive preparations. *Contraception*, 1985, 31:453-469.

(2) Fotherby K, et al. A preliminary pharmacological trial of the monthly injectable contraceptive Cycloprovera. *Contraception*, 1982, 25:261-272.

(3) Garza-Flores J, et al. A multicentered pharmacokinetic, pharmacodynamic study of once-a-month injectable contraceptives. I. Different doses of HRP112 and of Depo-Provera. *Contraception*, 1987, 36:441-457.

(4) Garza-Flores J. Pharmacokinetics of once-a-month injectable contraceptives. *Contraception*, 1994, 49:347-359.

(5) Said S, et al. A multicentered phase III comparative study of two hormonal contraceptive preparations given once-a-month by intramuscular injection: I. Contraceptive efficacy and side effects. *Contraception*, 1988, 37:455-466.

(6) Haiba NA, et al. Clinical evaluation of two monthly injectable contraceptives and their effects on some metabolic parameters. *Contraception*, 1989, 39:619-632.

(7) Kesseru EV, et al. A multicentered, two-year, phase III clinical trial of norethisterone enanthate 50 mg plus estradiol valerate 5 mg as a monthly injectable contraceptive. *Contraception*, 1991, 44:589-598.

(8) Meng Y-X, et al. Hemostatic changes in women using a monthly injectable contraceptive for one year. *Contraception*, 1990, 37:1-20.

(9) Abrams LS, Skee D, Natarajan J et al. Multiple-dose pharmacokinetics of a contraceptive patch in healthy women participants. *Contraception*, 2001, 64:287-294.

(10) Audet M-C, Moreau M, Koltun WD et al. Evaluation of contraceptive efficacy and cycle control of a transdermal contraceptive patch vs. an oral contraceptive: a randomized trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 2001, 285:2347-2354.

(11) Boonyarangkul A, Taneepanichskul S. Comparison of cycle control and side effects between transdermal contraceptive patch and an oral contraceptive in women older than 35 years. *Journal of the Medical Association of Thailand*, 2007, 90:1715-1719.

(12) Burkman RT. The transdermal contraceptive patch: a new approach to hormonal contraception. *International Journal of Fertility*, 2002, 47:69-76.

(13) Cole JA, Norman H, Doherty M et al. Venous thromboembolism, myocardial infarction, and stroke among transdermal contraceptive system users. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2007, 109:339-346.

(14) Devineni D, Skee D, Vaccaro N et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of a transdermal contraceptive patch and an oral contraceptive. *Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 2007, 47:497-509.

(15) Dittrich R, Parker L, Rosen JB et al. Transdermal contraception: evaluation of three transdermal norelgestromin/ethinyl estradiol doses in a randomized, multicenter, dose-response study. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2002, 186:15-20.

(16) Helmerhorst FM, Cronje HS, Hedon B et al. Comparison of efficacy, cycle control, compliance and safety in users of a contraceptive patch vs. an oral contraceptive. *International Journal of Gynaecology and Obstetrics*, 2000, 70:78.

(17) Jick S, Kaye J, Li L et al. Further results on the risk of nonfatal venous thromboembolism in users of the contraceptive transdermal patch compared to users of oral contraceptives containing norgestimate and 35 ug of ethinyl estradiol. *Contraception*, 2007, 76:4-7.

(18) Jick SS, Jick H. Cerebral venous sinus thrombosis in users of four hormonal contraceptives: levonorgestrel-containing oral contraceptives, norgestimate-containing oral contraceptives, desogestrel-containing oral contraceptives and the contraceptive patch. *Contraception*, 2006, 74:290-292.

(19) Jick SS, Kaye J, Russmaann S et al. Risk of nonfatal venous thromboembolism in women using a contraceptive transdermal patch and oral contraceptives containing norgestimate and 35 microg of ethinyl estradiol. *Contraception*, 2006, 73:223-228.

(20) Jick SS, Jick H. The contraceptive patch in relation to ischaemic stroke and acute myocardial infarction. *Pharmacotherapy*, 2007, 27:218-220.

(21) Pierson RA, Archer DF, Moreau M et al. Ortho Evra/Evra versus oral contraceptives: follicular development and ovulation in normal cycles and after an intentional dosing error. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2003, 80:34-42.

(22) Radowicki S, Skorzeqska K, Szlendak K. Safety evaluation of a transdermal contraceptive system with an oral contraceptive. *Ginekologia Polska*, 2005, 76:884-889.

(23) Smallwood GH, Meador ML, Lenihan JP et al. Efficacy and safety of a transdermal contraceptive system. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2001, 98:799-805.

(24) Urdl W, Apter D, Alperstein A et al. Contraceptive efficacy, compliance and beyond: factors related to satisfaction with once-weekly transdermal compared with oral contraception. *European Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology and Reproductive Biology*, 2005, 121:202-210.

(25) White T, Ozel B, Jain JK et al. Effects of transdermal and oral contraceptives on estrogen-sensitive hepatic proteins. *Contraception*, 2006, 74:293-296.

(26) Zieman M, Guillebaud JG, Weisberg E et al. Contraceptive efficacy and cycle control with the Ortho Evra/Evra transdermal system: the analysis of pooled data. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2002, 77:s13-s18.

(27) van den Heuvel MW, van Bragt AJM, Alnabawy AKM et al. Comparison of ethylestradiol pharmacokinetics in three hormonal contraceptive formulations: the vaginal ring, the transdermal patch and an oral contraceptive. *Contraception*, 2005, 72:168-174.

(28) Ahrendt HJ, Nisand I, Bastianelli C et al. Efficacy, acceptability and tolerability of the combined contraceptive ring, NuvaRing, compared with an oral contraceptive containing 30 microg of ethinyl estradiol and 3 mg of drospirene. *Contraception*, 2006, 74:451-457.

(29) Bjarnadottir RI, Tuppurainen M, Killick SR. Comparison of cycle control with a combined contraceptive vaginal ring and oral levonorgestrel/ethinyl estradiol. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2002, 186:389-395.

(30) Dieben T, Roumen FJ, Apter D. Efficacy, cycle control, and user acceptability of a novel combined contraceptive vaginal ring. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2002, 100:585-593.

(31) Duijkers I, Killick SR, Bigrigg A et al. A comparative study on the effects of a contraceptive vaginal ring NuvaRing and an oral contraceptive on carbohydrate metabolism and adrenal and thyroid function. *European Journal of Contraception & Reproductive Health Care*, 2004, 9:131-140.

(32) Duijkers I, Klipping C, Verhoeven CH et al. Ovarian function with the contraceptive vaginal ring or an oral contraceptive: a randomized study. *Human Reproduction*, 2004, 19:2668-2673.

(33) Elkind-Hirsch KE, Darensbourg C, Ogden B et al. Contraceptive vaginal ring use for women has less adverse metabolic effects than an oral contraceptive. *Contraception*, 2007, 76:348-356.

(34) Magnusdottir EM, Bjarnadottir RI, Onundarson PT et al. The contraceptive vaginal ring (NuvaRing) and hemostasis: a comparative study. *Contraception*, 2004, 69:461-467.

(35) Massai R, Makarainen L, Kuukankorpi A et al. The combined contraceptive vaginal ring (NuvaRing) and bone mineral density in healthy premenopausal women. *Human Reproduction*, 2005, 20:2764-2768.

(36) Milsom I, Lete I, Bjertnaes A et al. Effects on cycle control and bodyweight of the combined contraceptive ring, NuvaRing, versus an oral contraceptive containing 30µg ethinyl estradiol and 3 mg drospirenone. *Human Reproduction*, 2006, 21:2304-2311.

(37) Oddsson K, Leifels-Fischer B, de Melo NR et al. Efficacy and safety of a contraceptive vaginal ring (NuvaRing) compared with a combined oral contraceptive: a 1-year randomized trial. *Contraception*, 2005, 71:176-182.

(38) Sabatini R, Cagiano R. Comparison profiles of cycle control, side effects and sexual satisfaction of three hormonal contraceptives. *Contraception*, 2006, 74:220-223.

(39) Timmer CJ, Mulders TM. Pharmacokinetics of etonogestrel and ethinylestradiol released from a combined contraceptive vaginal ring. *Clinical Pharmacokinetics*, 2000, 39:233-242.

(40) Tuppurainen M, Klimscheffskij R, Venhola M et al. The combined contraceptive vaginal ring (NuvaRing) and lipid metabolism: a comparative study. *Contraception*, 2004, 69:389-394.

(41) Veres S, Miller L, Burington B. A comparison between the vaginal ring and oral contraceptives. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2004, 104:555-563.

(42) O'Connell KJ, Osborne LM, Westhoff C. Measured and reported weight change for women using a vaginal contraceptive ring vs. a low-dose oral contraceptive. *Contraception*, 2005, 72:323-327.

(43) Fine PM, Tryggestad J, Meyers NJ et al. Safety and acceptability with the use of a contraceptive vaginal ring after surgical or medical abortion. *Contraception*, 2007, 75:367-371.

(44) Beksinska ME, Kleinschmidt I, Smit JA et al. Bone mineral density in adolescents using norethisterone enanthate, depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate or combined oral contraceptives for contraception. *Contraception*, 2007, 75:438-443.

(45) Cromer BA, Blair JM, Mahan JD et al. A prospective comparison of bone density in adolescent girls receiving depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (Depo-Provera), levonorgestrel (Norplant), or oral contraceptives. *The Journal of Pediatrics*, 1996, 129:671-676.

(46) Cromer BA, Stager M, Bonny A et al. Depot medroxyprogesterone acetate, oral contraceptives and bone mineral density in a cohort of adolescent girls. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 2004, 35:434-441.

(47) Lara-Torre E, Edwards CP, Perlman S et al. Bone mineral density in adolescent females using depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. *Journal of Pediatric & Adolescent Gynecology*, 2004, 17:17-21.

(48) Lloyd T, Taylor DS, Lin HM et al. Oral contraceptive use by teenage women does not affect peak bone mass: a longitudinal study. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2000, 74:734-738.

(49) Lloyd T, Petit MA, Lin HM et al. Lifestyle factors and the development of bone mass and bone strength in young women. *The Journal of Pediatrics*, 2004, 144:776-782.

(50) Polatti F, Perotti F, Filippa N et al. Bone mass and long-term monophasic oral contraceptive treatment in young women. *Contraception*, 1995, 51:221-224.

(51) Wallace LS, Ballard JE. Lifetime physical activity and calcium intake related to bone density in young women. *Journal of Women's Health & Gender-based Medicine*, 2002, 11:389-398.

(52) Afghani A, Abbott AV, Wiswell RA et al. Bone mineral density in Hispanic women: Role of aerobic capacity, fat-free mass, and adiposity. *International Journal of Sports Medicine*, 2004, 25:384-390.

(53) Bahamondes L, Juliato CT, Villarreal M et al. Bone mineral density in users of two kinds of once-a-month combined injectable contraceptives. *Contraception*, 2006, 74:259-263.

(54) Berenson AB, Radecki CM, Grady JJ et al. A prospective, controlled study of the effects of hormonal contraception on bone mineral density. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2001, 98:576-582.

(55) Berenson AB, Breitkopf CR, Grady JJ et al. Effects of hormonal contraception on bone mineral density after 24 months of use. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2004, 103:899-906.

(56) Burr DB, Yoshikawa T, Teegarden D et al. Exercise and oral contraceptive use suppress the normal age-related increase in bone mass and strength of the femoral neck in women 18-31 years of age. *Bone*, 2000, 27:855-863.

(57) Castelo-Branco C, Martinez de Osaba MJ, Pons F et al. Effects on bone mass of two oral contraceptives containing ethinylestradiol and cyproterone acetate or desogestrel: results of a 2-year follow-up. *European Journal of Contraception & Reproductive Health Care*, 1998, 3:79-84.

(58) Cobb KL, Kelsey JL, Sidney S et al. Oral contraceptives and bone mineral density in white and black women in CARDIA. Coronary Risk Development in Young Adults. *Osteoporosis International*, 2002, 13:893-900.

(59) Collins C, Thomas K, Harding A et al. The effect of oral contraceptives on lumbar bone density in premenopausal women. *The Journal of the Louisiana State Medical Society*, 1988, 140:35-39.

(60) de Papp AE, Bone HG, Caulfield MP et al. A cross-sectional study of bone turnover markers in healthy premenopausal women. *Bone*, 2007, 40:1222-1230.

(61) Elgan C, Samsioe G, Dykes AK. Influence of smoking and oral contraceptives on bone mineral density and bone remodelling in young women: a 2-year study. *Contraception*, 2003, 67:439-447.

(62) Elgan C, Dykes AK, Samsioe G. Bone mineral density changes in young women: a two year study. *Gynecological Endocrinology*, 2004, 19:169-177.

(63) Endrikat J, Mih E, Dusterberg B et al. A 3-year double-blind, randomized, controlled study on the influence of two oral contraceptives containing either 20 microg or 30 microg ethinylestradiol in combination with levonorgestrel on bone mineral density. *Contraception*, 2004, 69:179-187.

(64) Fortney JA, Feldblum PJ, Talmage RV et al. Bone mineral density and history of oral contraceptive use. *Journal of Reproductive Medicine*, 1994, 39:105-109.

(65) Garnero P, Sornay-Rendu E, Delmas PD. Decreased bone turnover in oral contraceptive users. *Bone*, 1995, 16:499-503.

(66) Goldsmith N, Johnston J. Bone mineral: effects of oral contraceptives, pregnancy, and lactation. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, 1975, 57-A:657-668.

(67) Hall ML, Heavens J, Cullum ID et al. The range of bone density in normal British women. *The British Journal of Radiology*, 1990, 63:266-269.

(68) Hansen M, Overgaard K, Riis B et al. Potential risk factors for development of postmenopausal osteoporosis – examined over a 12-year period. *Osteoporosis International*, 1991, 1:95-102.

(69) Hartard M, Bottermann P, Bartenstein P et al. Effects on bone mineral density of low-dosed oral contraceptives compared to and combined with physical activity. *Contraception*, 1997, 55:87-90.

(70) Hartard M, Kleinmond C, Wiseman M et al. Detrimental effect of oral contraceptives on parameters of bone mass and geometry in a cohort of 248 young women. *Bone*, 2007: 40:444-450.

(71) Hawker GA, Forsmo S, Cadarette SM et al. Correlates of forearm bone mineral density in young Norwegian women: The Nord-Trondelag health study. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 2002, 156:418-427.

(72) Hreshchyshyn MM, Hopkins A, Zylstra S et al. Associations of parity, breast-feeding, and birth control pills with lumbar spine and femoral neck bone densities. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1988, 159:318-322.

(73) Kanders B, Lindsay R, Dempster D. Determinants of bone mass in young healthy women. In: Christiansen C, Arnaud C, Nordin B, Parfitt A, Peck W, Riggs B, eds. Proceedings of the Copenhagen international symposium on osteoporosis. Copenhagen, 1984: 337-339.

(74) Kleerekoper M, Brienza RS, Schultz LR et al. Oral contraceptive use may protect against low bone mass. Henry Ford Hospital Osteoporosis Cooperative Research Group. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 1991, 151:1971-1976.

(75) Kritz-Silverstein D, Barrett-Connor E. Bone mineral density in postmenopausal women as determined by prior oral contraceptive use. *American Journal of Public Health*, 1993, 83:100-102.

(76) Laitinen K, Valimaki M, Keto P. Bone mineral density measured by dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry in healthy Finnish women. *Calcified Tissue International*, 1991, 48:224-231.

(77) Lau EM, Lynn H, Woo J et al. Areal and volumetric bone density in Hong Kong Chinese: A comparison with Caucasians living in the United States. *Osteoporosis International*, 2003, 14:583-588.

(78) Lindsay R, Tohme J, Kanders B. The effect of oral contraceptive use on vertebral bone mass in pre- and post-menopausal women. *Contraception*, 1986, 34:333-340.

(79) Lloyd T, Buchanan JR, Ursino GR et al. Long-term oral contraceptive use does not affect trabecular bone density. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1989, 160:402-404.

(80) MacDougall J, Davies MC, Overton CE et al. Bone density in a population of long term oral contraceptive pill users does not differ from that in menstruating women. *The British Journal of Family Planning*, 1999, 25:96-100.

(81) Mais V, Fruzzetti F, Ajossa S et al. Bone metabolism in young women taking a monophasic pill containing 20 mcg ethinylestradiol: a prospective study. *Contraception*, 1993, 48:445-452.

(82) Masaryk P, Lunt M, Benevolenskaya L et al. Effects of menstrual history and use of medications on bone mineral density: the EVOS Study. *Calcified Tissue International*, 1998, 63:271-276.

(83) Mazess RB, Barden HS. Bone density in premenopausal women: effects of age, dietary intake, physical activity, smoking, and birth-control pills. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 1991, 53:132-142.

(84) Melton III LJ, Bryant SC, Wahner HW et al. Influence of breastfeeding and other reproductive factors on bone mass later in life. *Osteoporosis International*, 1993, 3:76-83.

(85) Murphy S, Khaw KT, Compston JE. Lack of relationship between hip and spine bone mineral density and oral contraceptive use. *European Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 1993, 23:108-111.

(86) Nappi C, Di Spiezio SA, Acunzo G et al. Effects of a low-dose and ultra-low-dose combined oral contraceptive use on bone turnover and bone mineral density in young fertile women: a prospective controlled randomized study. *Contraception*, 2003, 67:355-359.

(87) Nappi C, Di Spiezio SA, Greco E et al. Effects of an oral contraceptive containing drospirenone on bone turnover and bone mineral density. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2005, 105:53-60.

(88) Nelson M, Mayer AB, Rutherford O et al. Calcium intake, physical activity and bone mass in pre-menopausal women. *Journal of Human Nutrition & Dietetics*, 1991, 4.

(89) Ott SM, Scholes D, LaCroix AZ et al. Effects of contraceptive use on bone biochemical markers in young women. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism*, 2001, 86:179-185.

(90) Paoletti AM, Orru M, Lello S et al. Short-term variations in bone remodelling markers of an oral contraception formulation containing 3 mg of drospirenone plus 30 microg of ethinyl estradiol: observational study in young postadolescent women. *Contraception*, 2004, 70:293-298.

(91) Pasco JA, Kotowicz MA, Henry MJ et al. Oral contraceptives and bone mineral density: A population-based study. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2000, 182:265-269.

(92) Perrotti M, Bahamondes L, Petta C et al. Forearm bone density in long-term users of oral combined contraceptives and depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2001, 76:469-473.

(93) Petitti DB, Piaggio G, Mehta S et al. Steroid hormone contraception and bone mineral density: a cross-sectional study in an international population. The WHO Study of Hormonal Contraception and Bone Health. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2000, 95:736-744.

(94) Picard D, Ste-Marie LG, Coutu D et al. Premenopausal bone mineral content relates to height, weight and calcium intake during early adulthood. *Bone and Mineral*, 1988, 4:299-309.

(95) Prior JC, Kirkland SA, Joseph L et al. Oral contraceptive use and bone mineral density in premenopausal women: cross-sectional, population-based data from the Canadian Multicentre Osteoporosis Study. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 2001, 165:1023-1029.

(96) Recker RR, Davies KM, Hinders SM et al. Bone gain in young adult women. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 1992, 268:2403-2408.

(97) Reed SD, Scholes D, LaCroix AZ et al. Longitudinal changes in bone density in relation to oral contraceptive use. *Contraception*, 2003, 68:177-182.

(98) Rodin A, Chapman M, Fogelman I. Bone density in users of combined oral contraception. Preliminary reports of a pilot study. *British Journal of Family Planning*, 1991, 16.

(99) Shoepe HA, Snow CM. Oral contraceptive use in young women is associated with lower bone mineral density than that of controls. *Osteoporosis International*, 2005, 16:1538-1544.

(100) Stevenson JC, Lees B, Devenport M et al. Determinants of bone density in normal women: Risk factors for future osteoporosis? *British Medical Journal*, 1989, 298:924-928.

(101) Beksinska M, Smit J, Kleinschmidt I et al. Bone mineral density in women aged 40-49 years using depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate, norethisterone enanthate or combined oral contraceptives for contraception. *Contraception*, 2005, 71:170-175.

(102) Berning B, van KC, Schutte HE et al. Determinants of lumbar bone mineral density in normal weight, non-smoking women soon after menopause. A study using clinical data and quantitative computed tomography. *Bone and Mineral*, 1993, 21:129-139.

(103) Forsmo S, Schei B, Langhammer A et al. How do reproductive and lifestyle factors influence bone density in distal and ultradistal radius of early postmenopausal women? The Nord-Trondelag Health Survey, Norway. *Osteoporosis International*, 2001, 12:222-229.

(104) Gambacciani M, Spinetti A, Taponeco F et al. Longitudinal evaluation of perimenopausal vertebral bone loss: effects of a low-dose oral contraceptive preparation on bone mineral density and metabolism. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1994, 83:392-396.

(105) Gambacciani M, Spinetti A, Cappagli B et al. Hormone replacement therapy in perimenopausal women with a low dose oral contraceptive preparation: Effects on bone mineral density and metabolism. *Maturitas*, 1994, 19:125-131.

(106) Gambacciani M, Cappagli B, Ciaponi M et al. Hormone replacement therapy in perimenopause: effect of a low dose oral contraceptive preparation on bone quantitative ultrasound characteristics. *Menopause*, 1999, 6:43-48.

(107) Gambacciani M, Ciaponi M, Cappagli B et al. Longitudinal evaluation of perimenopausal femoral bone loss: effects of a low-dose oral contraceptive preparation on bone mineral density and metabolism. *Osteoporosis International*, 2000, 11:544-548.

(108) Gambacciani M, Cappagli B, Lazzarini V et al. Longitudinal evaluation of perimenopausal bone loss: Effects of different low dose oral contraceptive preparations on bone mineral density. *Maturitas*, 2006, 54:176-180.

(109) Grainge MJ, Coupland CA, Cliffe SJ et al. Reproductive, menstrual and menopausal factors: Which are associated with bone mineral density in early postmenopausal women? *Osteoporosis International*, 2001, 12:777-787.

(110) Johnell O, Nilsson BE. Life-style and bone mineral mass in perimenopausal women. *Calcified Tissue International*, 1984, 36:354-356.

(111) Liu SL, Lebrun CM. Effect of oral contraceptives and hormone replacement therapy on bone mineral density in premenopausal and perimenopausal women: a systematic review. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*, 2006, 40:11-24.

(112) Progetto Menopausa Italia Study Group. Risk of low bone density in women attending menopause clinics in Italy. *Maturitas*, 2002, 42:105-111.

(113) Shargil AA. Hormone replacement therapy in perimenopausal women with a triphasic contraceptive compound: a three-year prospective study. *International Journal of Fertility*, 1985, 30:18-20.

(114) Sowers MF, Wallace RB, Lemke JH. Correlates of forearm bone mass among women during maximal bone mineralization. *Preventive Medicine*, 1985, 14.

(115) Sultana S, Choudhury S, Choudhury SA. Effect of combined oral contraceptives on bone mineral density in pre and postmenopausal women. *Mymensingh Medical Journal*, 2002, 11:12-14.

(116) Taechakraichana N, Limpaphayom K, Ninlagarn T et al. A randomized trial of oral contraceptive and hormone replacement therapy on bone mineral density and coronary heart disease risk factors in postmenopausal women. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2000, 95:87-94.

(117) Taechakraichana N, Jaisamrarn U, Panyakhamlerd K et al. Difference in bone acquisition among hormonally treated postmenopausal women with normal and low bone mass. *Journal of the Medical Association of Thailand*, 2001, 84 Suppl 2:S586-S592.

(118) Tavani A, La VC, Franceschi S. Oral contraceptives and bone mineral density. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2001, 184:249-250.

(119) Tuppurainen M, Kroger H, Saarikoski S et al. The effect of previous oral contraceptive use on bone mineral density in perimenopausal women. *Osteoporosis International*, 1994, 4:93-98.

(120) Volpe A, Amram A, Cagnacci A et al. Biochemical aspects of hormonal contraception: effects on bone metabolism. *European Journal of Contraception & Reproductive Health Care*, 1997, 2:123-126.

(121) Barad D, Kooperberg C, Wactawski-Wende J et al. Prior oral contraception and postmenopausal fracture: a Women's Health Initiative observational cohort study. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2005, 84:374-383.

(122) Cobb KL, Bachrach LK, Sowers M et al. The effect of oral contraceptives on bone mass and stress fractures in female runners. *Medicine in Science and Sports Exercise*, 2007, 39:1464-1473.

(123) Cooper C, Hannaford P, Croft P et al. Oral contraceptive pill use and fractures in women: a prospective study. *Bone*, 1993, 14:41-45.

(124) Johansson C, Mellstrom D. An earlier fracture as a risk factor for new fracture and its association with smoking and menopausal age in women. *Maturitas*, 1996, 24:97-106.

(125) La Vecchia C, Tavani A, Gallus S. Oral contraceptives and risk of hip fractures. *Lancet*, 1999, 354:335-336.

(126) Mallmin H, Ljunghall S, Persson I et al. Risk factors for fractures of the distal forearm: a population-based case-control study. *Osteoporosis International*, 1994, 4:298-304.

(127) Michaelsson K, Baron JA, Farahmand BY et al. Oral-contraceptive use and risk of hip fracture: a case-control study. *Lancet*, 1999, 353:1481-1484.

(128) Michaelsson K, Baron JA, Farahmand BY et al. Influence of parity and lactation on hip fracture risk. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 2001, 153:1166-1172.

(129) O'Neill TW, Marsden D, Adams JE et al. Risk factors, falls, and fracture of the distal forearm in Manchester, UK. *Journal of Epidemiology & Community Health*, 1996, 50:288-292.

(130) O'Neill TW, Silman AJ, Naves DM et al. Influence of hormonal and reproductive factors on the risk of vertebral deformity in European women. European Vertebral Osteoporosis Study Group. *Osteoporosis International*, 1997, 7:72-78.

(131) Vessey M, Mant J, Painter R. Oral contraception and other factors in relation to hospital referral for fracture. Findings in a large cohort study. *Contraception*, 1998, 57:231-235.

(132) Vestergaard P, Rejnmark L, Mosekilde L. Oral contraceptive use and risk of fractures. *Contraception*, 2006, 73:571-576.

(133) Croxatto HB, Diaz S, Peralta O et al. Fertility regulation in nursing women. 4. Long-term influence of a low-dose combined oral-contraceptive initiated at day 30 postpartum upon lactation and infant growth. *Contraception*, 1983, 27:13-25.

(134) Diaz S, Peralta O, Juez G et al. Fertility regulation in nursing women. 3. Short-term influence of a low-dose combined oral-contraceptive upon lactation and infant growth. *Contraception*, 1983, 27:1-11.

(135) Gambrell RD. Immediate postpartum oral contraception. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 1970, 36:101-106.

(136) Guiloff E, Ibarrapo A, Zanartu J et al. Effect of contraception on lactation. *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 1974, 118:42-45.

(137) Kaern T. Effect of an oral contraceptive immediately post partum on initiation of lactation. *British Medical Journal*, 1967, 3:644-645.

(138) Miller GH, Hughes LR. Lactation and genital involution effects of a new low-dose oral contraceptive on breast-feeding mothers and their infants. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 1970, 35:44-50.

(139) Nilsson S, Melbin T, Hofvander Y, Sundelin C, Valentin J, Nygren KG. Long-term follow-up of children breast-fed by women using oral contraceptives. *Contraception,* 1986, 34:443-453.

(140) Peralta O, Diaz S, Juez G et al. Fertility Regulation in Nursing Women. 5. Long-term influence of a low-dose combined oral-contraceptive initiated at day 90 postpartum upon lactation and infant growth. *Contraception*, 1983, 27:27-38.

(141) WHO Special Programme of Research Development and Research Training in Human Reproduction. Effects of hormonal contraceptives on milk volume and infant growth. *Contraception*, 1984, 30:505-522.

(142) World Health Organization Task Force on Oral Contraceptives Special Programme of Research Development and Research Training in Human Reproduction. Effects of hormonal contraceptives on breast milk composition and infant growth. *Studies in Family Planning* ,1988,19:361-369.

(143) Heit JA, Kobbervig CE, James AH, Petterson TM, Bailey KR, Melton LJ, III. Trends in the incidence of venous thromboembolism during pregnancy or postpartum: a 30-year population-based study. *Annals of Internal Medecine,* 2005, 143(10):697-706.

(144) McColl MD, Ramsay JE, Tait RC, Walker ID, McCall F, Conkie JA, et al. Risk factors for pregnancy associated venous thromboembolism. *Journal of Thrombosis & Haemostatis,* 1997, 78:1183-1188.

(145) Chan LY, Tam WH, Lau TK. Venous thromboembolism in pregnant Chinese women. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2001, 98(3):471-5.

(146) Gherman RB, Goodwin TM, Leung B, Byrne JD, Hethumumi R, Montoro M. Incidence, clinical characteristics, and timing of objectively diagnosed venous thromboembolism during pregnancy. *Obstetrics & Gynecology,* 1999, 94:730-734.

(147) Haggaz AA, Mirghani OA, Adam I. Venous thromboembolism in pregnancy and the puerperium in Sudanese women. *International Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology,* 2003, 83(3):309-310.

(148) Jacobsen AF, Skjeldestad FE, Sandset PM. Incidence and risk patterns of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy and puerperium – a register-based case–control study. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology,* 2008, 198(2):233-237.

(149) James KV, Lohr JM, Deshmukh RM, Cranley JJ. Venous thrombotic complications of pregnancy. *Cardiovascular Surgery*, 1996, 4(6):777-782.

(150) Larsen TB, Sorensen HT, Gislum M, Johnsen SP. Maternal smoking, obesity, and risk of venous thromboembolism during pregnancy and the puerperium: a population-based nested case-control study. *Thrombosis Research,* 2007, 120(4):505-509.

(151) Lindqvist PG, Torsson J, Almqvist A, Bjorgell O. Postpartum thromboembolism: severe events might be preventable using a new risk score model. *Vascular Health Risk Management,* 2008, 4(5):1081-7.

(152) Pomp ER, Lenselink AM, Rosendaal FR, Doggen CJ. Pregnancy, the postpartum period and prothrombotic defects: risk of venous thrombosis in the MEGA study. *Journal of Thrombosis & Haemostatis,* 2008 6(4):632-637.

(153) Ros HS, Lichtenstein P, Bellocco R, Petersson G, Cnattingius S. Increased risks of circulatory diseases in late pregnancy and puerperium. *Epidemiology,* 2001, 12(4):456-460.

(154) Sharma S, Monga D. Venous thromboembolism during pregnancy and the post-partum period: incidence and risk factors in a large Victorian health service. *Australia & New Zealand Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology,* 2008, 48(1):44-49.

(155) Andersen BS, Steffensen FH, Sorensen HT, Nielsen GL, Olsen J. The cumulative incidence of venous thromboembolism during pregnancy and puerperium--an 11 year Danish population-based study of 63,300 pregnancies. *Acta Obstetricia Gynecologica Scandinavica,* 1998, 77(2):170-173.

(156) Larsen TB, Johnsen SP, Gislum M, Moller AI, Larsen H, Sorensen HT. ABO blood groups and risk of venous thromboembolism during pregnancy and the puerperium. A population-based, nested case-control study. *Journal of Thrombosis & Haemostasis*, 2005, 3:300-304.

(157) Lindqvist PG, Dahlback B, Marsal K. Thrombotic risk during pregnancy: a population study. *Obstetrics & Gynaecology,* 1999, 94:595-599.

(158) Heinemann LAJ, Dinger JC. Range of published estimates of venous thromboembolism incidence in young women. *Contraception*, 2007, 75:328-36.

(159) Lidegaard O, Lokkegaard E, Svendsen AL, Agger C. Hormonal contraception and risk of venous thromboembolism: National follow-up study. *British Medical Journal,* 2009, 339(b2890).

(160) Glasier A, McNeilly AS, Howie PW. Fertility after childbirth: Changes in serum gonadotrophin levels in bottle and breast feeding women. *Clinical Endocrinology,* 1983, 19:493-501.

(161) Howie PW, McNeilly AS, Houston MJ, Cook A, Boyle H. Fertility after childbirth: Postpartum ovulation and menstruation in bottle and breast feeding mothers. *Clinical Endocrinology*, 1982;17:323-332.

(162) McNeilly AS, Howie PW, Houston MJ, Cook A, Boyle H. Fertility after childbirth: Adequacy of postpartum luteal phases. *Clinical Endocrinology*, 1982, 17:609-615.

(163) Campbell OMR, Gray RH. Characteristics and determinants of postpartum ovarian function in women in the United States. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology,* 1993, 169:55-60.

(164) Gray RH, Campbell OMR, Zacur HA, Labbok MH, MacRae SL. Postpartum return of ovarian activity in nonbreastfeeding women monitored by urinary assay. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism*, 1987, 64:645-650.

(165) Cronin TJ. Influence of lactation upon ovulation. *Lancet,* 1968, 292(7565):422-424.

(166) Lahteenmaki P. Influence of oral contraceptives on immediate postabortal pituitary-ovarian function. *Acta Obstetricia et Gynecologica Scandinavica*, 1978, 76:1-38.

(167) Lahteenmaki P, et al. Coagulation factors in women using oral contraceptives or intrauterine contraceptive devices immediately after abortion. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1981, 141:175-179.

(168) Martin CW, Brown AH, Baird DT. A pilot study of the effect of methotrexate or combined oral contraceptive on bleeding patterns after induction of abortion with mifepristone and a prostaglandin pessary. *Contraception,* 1998, 58:99-103.

(169) Niswonger JWH, et al. Oral contraceptives during immediate postabortal period. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 1968, 32:325-327.

(170) Peterson WF. Contraceptive therapy following therapeutic abortion. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 1974, 44:853-857.

(171) Tang OS, et al. A randomized double-blind placebo-controlled study to assess the effect of oral contraceptive pills on the outcome of medical abortion with mifepristone and misoprostol. *Human Reproduction*, 1999, 14:722-725.

(172) Tang OS, et al. The effect of contraceptive pills on the measured blood loss in medical termination of pregnancy by mifepristone and misoprostol: a randomized placebo controlled trial. *Human Reproduction*, 2002, 17:99-102.

(173) Gaffield ME, Kapp N, Ravi A. Use of combined oral contraceptives post abortion. *Contraception,* 2009; 80:355-362

(174) Gillum LA, Mamidipudi SK, Johnston SC. Ischaemic stroke risk with oral contraceptives: a meta-analysis. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 2000, 284:72-78.

(175) Jick SS, et al. Oral contraceptives and breast cancer. *British Journal of Cancer*, 1989, 59:618-621.

(176) Khader YS, et al. Oral contraceptive use and the risk of myocardial infarction: a meta-analysis. *Contraception*, 2003, 68:11-17.

(177) Lawson DH, Davidson JF, Jick H. Oral contraceptive use and venous thromboembolism: absence of an effect of smoking. *British Medical Journal*, 1977, 2:729-730.

(178) Lidegaard O, Edstrom B, Kreiner S. Oral contraceptives and venous thromboembolism. A case-control study. *Contraception*, 1998, 57:291-301.

(179) Nightingale AL, et al. The effects of age, body mass index, smoking and general health on the risk of venous thromboembolism in users of combined oral contraceptives. *European Journal of Contraception & Reproductive Health Care*, 2000, 5:265-274.

(180) Petitti D, et al. Risk of vascular disease in women. Smoking, oral contraceptives, noncontraceptive estrogens, and other factors. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1979, 242:1150-1154.

(181) Rosenberg L, et al. Low-dose oral contraceptive use and the risk of myocardial infarction. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 2001, 161:1065-1070.

(182) Straneva P, et al. Smoking, oral contraceptives, and cardiovascular reactivity to stress. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2000, 95:78-83.

(183) Tanis BC, et al. Oral contraceptives and the risk of myocardial infarction. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 2001, 345:1787-1793.

(184) Van den bosch MA, et al. The RATIO study: oral contraceptives and the risk of peripheral arterial disease in young women. *Journal of Thrombosis and Haemostasis*, 2003, 1:439-444.

(185) WHO. Venous thromboembolic disease and combined oral contraceptives: results of international multicentre case-control study. *Lancet*, 1995, 346:1575-1582.

(186) Abdollahi M, Cushman M, Rosendaal FR. Obesity: risk of venous thrombosis and the interaction with coagulation factor levels and oral contraceptive use. *Thrombosis & Haemostasis*, 2003, 89:493-498.

(187) Lidegaard O, Edstrom B, Kreiner S. Oral contraceptives and venous thromboembolism: a five-year national case-control study. *Contraception*, 2002, 65:187-196.

(188) Pomp ER, le CS, Rosendaal FR et al. Risk of venous thrombosis: obesity and its joint effect with oral contraceptive use and prothrombotic mutations. *British Journal of Haematology*, 2007, 139:289-296.

(189) Schwartz SM, Petitti DB, Siscovick DS et al. Stroke and use of low-dose oral contraceptives in young women: a pooled analysis of two US studies. *Stroke*, 1998, 29:2277-2284.

(190) Sidney S, Siscovick DS, Petitti DB et al. Myocardial infarction and use of low-dose oral contraceptives: a pooled analysis of 2 US studies. *Circulation*, 1998, 98:1058-1063.

(191) Sidney S, Petitti DB, Soff GA et al. Venous thromboembolic disease in users of low-estrogen combined estrogen-progestin oral contraceptives. *Contraception*, 2004, 70:3-10.

(192) Brunner Huber LR, Hogue CJ, Stein AD et al. Body mass index and risk for oral contraceptive failure: a case-cohort study in South Carolina. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 2006, 16:637-643.

(193) Brunner Huber LR, Toth JL. Obesity and oral contraceptive failure: findings from the 2002 National Survey of Family Growth. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 2007, 166:1306-1311.

(194) Brunner LR, Hogue CJ. The role of body weight in oral contraceptive failure: results from the 1995 national survey of family growth. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 2005, 15:492-499.

(195) Holt VL, Cushing-Haugen KL, Daling JR. Body weight and risk of oral contraceptive failure. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2002, 99:820-827.

(196) Holt VL, Scholes D, Wicklund KG et al. Body mass index, weight, and oral contraceptive failure risk. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2005, 105:46-52.

(197) Vessey M. Oral contraceptive failures and body weight: findings in a large cohort study. *Journal of Family Planning and Reproductive Health Care*, 2001, 27:90-91.

(198) O'Connell KJ, Osborne LM, Westoff C. Measured and reported weight change for women using a vaginal contraceptive ring vs. a low-dose oral contraceptive. *Contraception*, 2005, 72:323-327.

(199) Heinemann LA, et al. Thromboembolic stroke in young women. A European case-control study on oral contraceptives. *Contraception*, 1998, 57:29-37.

(200) Lewis MA, et al. The use of oral contraceptives and the occurrence of acute myocardial infarction in young women. Results from the Transnational Study on Oral Contraceptives and the Health of Young Women. *Contraception*, 1997, 56:129-140.

(201) WHO. Haemorrhagic stroke, overall stroke risk, and combined oral contraceptives: results of an international, multicentre, case-control study. WHO Collaborative Study of Cardiovascular Disease and Steroid Hormone Contraception. *Lancet*, 1996, 348:505-510.

(202) WHO. Ischaemic stroke and combined oral contraceptives: results of an international, multicentre, case-control study. WHO Collaborative Study on Cardiovascular Disease and Steroid Hormone Contraception. *Lancet*, 1996, 348:498-505.

(203) WHO. Acute myocardial infarction and combined oral contraceptives: results of an international multicentre case-control study. WHO Collaborative Study on Cardiovascular Disease and Steroid Hormone Contraception. *Lancet*, 1997, 349:1202-1209.

(204) Collaborative Group for the Study of Stroke in Young Women. Oral contraceptives and stroke in young women: associated risk factors. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1975, 231:718-722.

(205) Croft P, Hannaford P. Risk factors for acute myocardial infarction in women: evidence from the Royal College of General Practitioners' Oral Contraception Study. *British Medical Journal*, 1989, 298:165-168.

(206) D'Avanzo B, et al. Oral contraceptive use and risk of myocardial infarction: an Italian case-control study. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 1994, 48:324-328.

(207) Dunn NR, et al. Risk of myocardial infarction in young female smokers. *Heart (British Cardiac Society)*, 1999, 82:581-583.

(208) Hannaford P, Croft P, Kay CR. Oral contraception and stroke: Evidence from the Royal College of General Practitioners' Oral Contraception Study. *Stroke*, 1994, 25:935-942.

(209) Kemmeren JM, et al. Risk of Arterial Thrombosis in Relation to Oral Contraceptives (RATIO) study: oral contraceptives and the risk of ischaemic stroke. *Stroke*, 2002, 33:1202-1208.

(210) Lidegaard O. Oral contraception and risk of a cerebral thromboembolic attack: results of a case-control study. *British Medical Journal*, 1993, 306:956-963.

(211) Lidegaard O. Oral contraceptives, pregnancy and the risk of cerebral thromboembolism: the influence of diabetes, hypertension, migraine and previous thrombotic disease. *British Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 1995, 102:153-159.

(212) Lubianca JN, Faccin CS, Fuchs FD. Oral contraceptives: a risk factor for uncontrolled blood pressure among hypertensive women. *Contraception*, 2003, 67:19-24.

(213) Narkiewicz K, et al. Ambulatory blood pressure in mild hypertensive women taking oral contraceptives. A case-control study. *American Journal of Hypertension*, 1995, 8:249-253.

(214) Siritho S, et al. Risk of ischaemic stroke among users of the oral contraceptive pill: The Melbourne Risk Factor Study (MERFS) Group. *Stroke*, 2003, 34:1575-1580.

(215) Lubianca JN, Moreira LB, Gus M et al. Stopping oral contraceptives: an effective blood pressure-lowering intervention in women with hypertension. *Journal of Human Hypertension*, 2005, 19:451-455.

(216) Aberg H, Karlsson L, Melander S. Studies on toxaemia of pregnancy with special reference to blood pressure. II. Results after 6-11 years' follow-up. *Upsala Journal of Medical Sciences*, 1978, 83:97-102.

(217) Carmichael SM, Taylor MM, Ayers CR. Oral contraceptives, hypertension, and toxemia. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1970, 35:371-376.

(218) Meinel H, Ihle R, Laschinski M. [Effect of hormonal contraceptives on blood pressure following pregnancy-induced hypertension]. [German]. *Zentralblatt fur Gynäkologie*, 1987, 109:527-531.

(219) Pritchard JA, Pritchard SA. Blood pressure response to estrogen-progestin oral contraceptive after pregnancy-induced hypertension. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1977, 129:733-739.

(220) Sibai BM, et al. Maternal-perinatal outcome associated with the syndrome of hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets in severe preeclampsia-eclampsia. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1986, 155:501-509.

(221) Sibai BM, et al. Pregnancies complicated by HELLP syndrome (hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets): subsequent pregnancy outcome and long-term prognosis. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1995, 172:125-129.

(222) Anderson BS, Olsen J, Nielsen GL et al. Third generation oral contraceptives and heritable thrombophilia as risk factors of non-fatal venous thromboembolism. *Thrombosis & Haemostasis*, 1998, 79:28-31.

(223) Aznar J, Mira Y, Vaya A et al. Factor V Leiden and prothrombin G20210A mutations in young adults with cryptogenic ischaemic stroke. *Thrombosis & Haemostasis*, 2004, 91:1031-1034.

(224) Bennet L, Odeberg H. Resistance to activated protein C, highly prevalent amongst users of oral contraceptives with venous thromboembolism. *Journal of Internal Medicine*, 1998, 244:27-32.

(225) Bloemenkamp KW, Rosendaal FR, Helmerhorst FM et al. Enhancement by factor V Leiden mutation of risk of deep-vein thrombosis associated with oral contraceptives containing a third-generation progestagen [comment]. *Lancet*, 1995, 346:1593-1596.

(226) Bloemenkamp KW, Rosendaal FR, Helmerhorst FM et al. Higher risk of venous thrombosis during early use of oral contraceptives in women with inherited clotting defects [comment]. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 2000, 160:49-52.

(227) de Bruijn SF, Stam J, Koopman MM et al. Case-control study of risk of cerebral sinu thrombosis in oral contraceptive users and in [correction of who are] carriers of hereditary prothrombotic conditions. The Cerebral Venous Sinus Thrombosis Study Group. *British Medical Journal*, 1998, 316:589-592.

(228) Emmerich J, Rosendaal FR, Cattaneo M et al. Combined effect of factor V Leiden and prothrombin 20210A on the risk of venous thromboembolism – pooled analysis of 8 case-control studies including 2310 cases and 3204 controls. Study Group for Pooled-Analysis in Venous Thromboembolism. *Thrombosis & Haemostasis*, 2001, 86:809-816.

(229) Gadelha T, Andre C, Juca AA et al. Prothrombin 20210A and oral contraceptive use as risk factors for cerebral venous thrombosis. *Cerebrovascular Diseases*, 2005, 19:49-52.

(230) Legnani C, Palareti G, Guazzaloca G et al. Venous thromboembolism in young women: role of thrombophilic mutations and oral contraceptive use. *European Heart Journal*, 2002, 23:984-990.

(231) Martinelli I, Sacchi E, Landi G et al. High risk of cerebral-vein thrombosis in carriers of a prothrombin-gene mutation and in users of oral contraceptives. [comment]. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 1998, 338:1793-1797.

(232) Martinelli I, Taioli E, Bucciarelli P et al. Interaction between the G20210A mutation of the prothrombin gene and oral contraceptive use in deep vein thrombosis. *Arteriosclerosis, Thrombosis & Vascular Biology*, 1999, 19:700-703.

(233) Martinelli I, Battaglioli T, Bucciarelli P et al. Risk factors and recurrence rate of primary deep vein thrombosis of the upper extremities. *Circulation*, 2004, 110:566-570.

(234) Martinelli I, Battaglia C, Burgo I et al. Oral contraceptive use, thrombophilia and their interaction in young women with ischaemic stroke. *Haematologica*, 2006, 91:844-847.

(235) Middeldorp S, Meinardi JR, Koopman MM et al. A prospective study of asymptomatic carriers of the factor V Leiden mutation to determine the incidence of venous thromboembolism. [comment]. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 2001, 135:322-327.

(236) Pabinger I, Schneider B. Thrombotic risk of women with hereditary antithrombin III-, protein C- and protein S-deficiency taking oral contraceptive medication. The GTH Study Group on Natural Inhibitors. *Thrombosis & Haemostasis*, 1994, 71:548-552.

(237) Pezzini A, Grassi M, Iacoviello L et al. Inherited thrombophilia and stratification of ischaemic stroke risk among users of oral contraceptives. *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery, and Psychiatry*, 2007, 78:271-276.

(238) Santamaria A, Mateo J, Oliver A et al. Risk of thrombosis associated with oral contraceptives of women from 97 families with inherited thrombophilia: high risk of thrombosis in carriers of the G20210A mutation of the prothrombin gene. *Haematologica*, 2001, 86:965-971.

(239) Slooter AJ, Rosendaal FR, Tanis BC et al. Prothrombotic conditions, oral contraceptives, and the risk of ischaemic stroke. *Journal of Thrombosis and Haemostasis*, 2005, 3:1213-1217.

(240) Spannagl M, Heinemann LA, Schramm W. Are factor V Leiden carriers who use oral contraceptives at extreme risk of venous thromboembolism? *European Journal of Contraception & Reproductive Health Care*, 2000, 5:105-112.

(241) van Boven HH, Vandenbroucke JP, Briet E et al. Gene-gene and gene-environment interactions determine risk of thrombosis in families with inherited antithrombin deficiency. *Blood*, 1999, 94:2590-2594.

(242) van Vlijmen EF, Brouwer JL, Veeger NJ et al. Oral contraceptives and the absolute risk of venous thromboembolism in women with single or multiple thrombophilic defects: results from a retrospective family cohort study. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 2007, 167:282-289.

(243) Vandenbroucke JP, Koster T, Briet E et al. Increased risk of venous thrombosis in oral-contraceptive users who are carriers of factor V Leiden mutation. [comment]. *Lancet*, 1994, 344:1453-1457.

(244) Vaya AM. Prothrombin G20210A mutation and oral contraceptive use increase upper-extremity deep vein thrombotic risk. *Thrombosis & Haemostasis*, 2003, 89:452-457.

(245) Bernatsky S, Ramsey-Goldman R, Gordon C et al. Factors associated with abnormal Pap results in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*, 2004, 43:1386-1389.

(246) Bernatsky S, Clarke A, Ramsey-Goldman R et al. Hormonal exposures and breast cancer in a sample of women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*, 2004, 43:1178-1181.

(247) Chopra N, Koren S, Greer WL et al. Factor V Leiden, prothrombin gene mutation, and thrombosis risk in patients with antiphospholipid antibodies. *Journal of Rheumatology*, 2002, 29:1683-1688.

(248) Esdaile JM, Abrahamowicz M, Grodzicky T et al. Traditional Framingham risk factors fail to fully account for accelerated atherosclerosis in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 2001, 44:2331-2337.

(249) Julkunen HA. Oral contraceptives in systemic lupus erythematosus: side-effects and influence on the activity of SLE. *Scandinavian Journal of Rheumatology*, 1991, 20:427-433.

(250) Julkunen HA, Kaaja R, Friman C. Contraceptive practice in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *British Journal of Rheumatology*, 1993, 32:227-230.

(251) Jungers P, Dougados M, Pelissier C et al. Influence of oral contraceptive therapy on the activity of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 1982, 25:618-623.

(252) Manzi S, Meilahn EN, Rairie JE et al. Age-specific incidence rates of myocardial infarction and angina in women with systemic lupus erythematosus: comparison with the Framingham Study. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 1997, 145:408-415.

(253) McAlindon T, Giannotta L, Taub N et al. Environmental factors predicting nephristis in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Annals of Rheumatic Diseases*, 1993, 52:720-724.

(254) McDonald J, Stewart J, Urowitz MB et al. Peripheral vascular disease in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Annals of Rheumatic Diseases*, 1992, 51:56-60.

(255) Mintz G, Gutierrez G, Deleze M et al. Contraception with progestogens in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Contraception*, 1984, 30:29-38.

(256) Petri M. Musculoskeletal complications of systemic lupus erythematosus in the Hopkins Lupus Cohort: an update. *Arthritis Care and Research*, 1995, 8:137-145.

(257) Petri M, Kim MY, Kalunian KC et al. Combined oral contraceptives in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 2005, 353:2550-2558.

(258) Petri M. Lupus in Baltimore: evidence-based 'clinical pearls' from the Hopkins Lupus Cohort. *Lupus*, 2005, 14:970-973.

(259) Sanchez-Guerrero J, Uribe AG, Jimenez-Santana L et al. A trial of contraceptive methods in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 2005, 353:2539-2549.

(260) Sarabi ZS, Chang E, Bobba R et al. Incidence rates of arterial and venous thrombosis after diagnosis of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 2005, 53:609-612.

(261) Schaedel ZE, Dolan G, Powell MC. The use of the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system in the management of menorrhagia in women with hemostatic disorders. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2005, 193:1361-1363.

(262) Somers E, Magder LS, Petri M. Antiphospholipid antibodies and incidence of venous thrombosis in a cohort of patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Journal of Rheumatology*, 2002, 29:2531-2536.

(263) Urowitz MB, Bookman AA, Koehler BE et al. The bimodal mortality pattern of systemic lupus erythematosus. *American Journal of Medicine*, 1976, 60:221-225.

(264) Choojitarom K, Verasertniyom O, Totemchokchyakarn K et al. Lupus nephritis and Raynaud's phenomenon are significant risk factors for vascular thrombosis in SLE patients with positive antiphospholipid antibodies. *Clinical Rheumatology*, 2008, 27:345-351.

(265) Wahl DG, Guillemin F, de Maistre E et al. Risk for venous thrombosis related to antiphospholipid antibodies in systemic lupus erythematosus – a meta-analysis. *Lupus*, 1997, 6:467-473.

(266) Culwell KR, Curtis KM, del Carmen Cravioto M. Safety of contraceptive method use among women with systematic lupus erythematosus: A systematic review. *Obstetrics and Gynecology,* 2009, 114(2 Pt 1):341-53.

(267) Carolei A, Marini C, De Matteis G. History of migraine and risk of cerebral ischaemia in young adults. The Italian National Research Council Study Group on Stroke in the Young. *Lancet*, 1996, 347:1503-1506.

(268) Chang CL, Donaghy M, Poulter N. Migraine and stroke in young women: case-control study. The World Health Organisation Collaborative Study of Cardiovascular Disease and Steroid Hormone Contraception. *British Medical Journal*, 1999, 318:13-18.

(269) Tzourio C, Tehindrazanarivelo A, Iglesias S et al. Case-control study of migraine and risk of ischaemic stroke in young women. *British Medical Journal*, 1995, 310:830-833.

(270) Oral contraceptives and stroke in young women. Associated risk factors. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1975, 231:718-722.

(271) Etminan M, Takkouche B, Isorna FC et al. Risk of ischaemic stroke in people with migraine: systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies. *British Medical Journal*, 2005, 330:63.

(272) Lidegaard O. Oral contraceptives, pregnancy, and the risk of cerebral thromboembolism: the influence of diabetes, hypertension, migraine and previous thrombotic disease. (Letter). *British Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 1996, 103:94.

(273) Nightingale AL, Farmer RD. Ischaemic stroke in young women: a nested case-control study using the UK General Practice Research Database. *Stroke*, 2004, 35:1574-1578.

(274) Cromer BA, Smith RD, Blair JM et al. A prospective study of adolescents who choose among levonorgestrel implant (Norplant), medroxyprogesterone acetate (Depo-Provera), or the combined oral contraceptive pill as contraception. *Pediatrics*, 1994, 94 :687-694.

(275) Deijen JB, Duyn KJ, Jansen WA et al. Use of a monophasic, low-dose oral contraceptive in relation to mental functioning. *Contraception*, 1992, 46 :359-367.

(276) Duke JM, Sibbritt DW, Young AF. Is there an association between the use of oral contraception and depressive symptoms in young Australian women? *Contraception*, 2007, 75:27-31.

(277) Gupta N, O'Brien R, Jacobsen LJ et al. Mood changes in adolescents using depo-medroxyprogesterone acetate for contraception: a prospective study. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2001, 14:71-76.

(278) Herzberg BN, Draper KC, Johnson AL et al. Oral contraceptives, depression, and libido. *British Medical Journal*, 1971, 3:495-500.

(279) Koke SC, Brown EB, Miner CM. Safety and efficacy of fluoxetine in patients who receive oral contraceptive therapy. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2002, 187:551-555.

(280) O'Connell K, Davis AR, Kerns J. Oral contraceptives: side effects and depression in adolescent girls. *Contraception*, 2007, 75:299-304.

(281) Westoff C, Truman C. Depressive symptoms and Depo-Provera. *Contraception*, 1998, 57:237-240.

(282) Westoff C, Truman C, Kalmuss D et al. Depressive symptoms and Norplant contraceptive implants. *Contraception*, 1998, 57:241-245.

(283) Young EA, Kornstein SG, Harvey AT et al. Influences of hormone-based contraception on depressive symptoms in premenopausal women with major depression. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 2007, 32:843-853.

(284) Iyer V, Farquhar C, Jepson R. Oral contraceptive pills for heavy menstrual bleeding. [Review] [1 refs]. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 2000,CD000154.

(285) Davis L, Kennedy SS, Moore J et al. Modern combined oral contraceptives for pain associated with endometriosis. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 2007,CD001019.

(286) Hendrix SL, Alexander NJ. Primary dysmenorrhea treatment with a desogestrel-containing low-dose oral contraceptive. *Contraception*, 2002, 66:393-399.

(287) Proctor ML, Roberts H, Farquhar C. Combined oral contraceptive pill (OCP) as treatment for primary dysmenorrhoea. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 2001, CD002120.

(288) Adewole IF, Oladokun A, Fawole AO et al. Fertility regulatory methods and development of complications after evacuation of complete hydatidiform mole. *Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 2000, 20:68-69.

(289) Berkowitz RS, Goldstein DP, Marean AR et al. Oral contraceptives and post-molar trophoblastic disease. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1981, 58:474-477.

(290) Curry SL, et al. Hormonal contraception and trophoblastic sequelae after hydatidiform mole (a Gynecologic Oncology Group Study). *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1989, 160:805-809.

(291) Deicas RE, et al. The role of contraception in the development of postmolar trophoblastic tumour. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1991, 78:221-226.

(292) Goldberg GL, Cloete K, Bloch B et al. Medroxyprogesterone acetate in non-metastatic gestational trophoblastic disease. *British Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 1987, 94:22-25.

(293) Ho Yuen B, Burch P. Relationship of oral contraceptives and the intrauterine contraceptive devices to the regression of concentration of the beta subunit of human chorionic gonadotropin and invasive complications after molar pregnancy. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1983, 145:214-217.

(294) Morrow P, Nakamura R, Schlaerth J et al. The influence of oral contraceptives on the postmolar human chorionic gonadotropin regression curve. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1985, 151:906-914.

(295) Gaffield ME, Kapp K, Curtis KM. Combined oral contraceptive and intrauterine device use among women with gestational trophoblastic disease. *Contraception,* 2009; 80:363-371.

(296) Eddy GL, Schlaerth JB, Natlick RH et al. Postmolar trophoblastic disease in women using hormonal contraception with and without estrogen. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1983, 62:736-740.

(297) Smith JS. Cervical cancer and use of hormonal contraceptives: a systematic review. *Lancet*, 2003, 361:1159-1167.

(298) Black MM, Barclay THC, Polednak A et al. Family history, oral contraceptive usage, and breast cancer. *Cancer*, 1983, 51:2147-2151.

(299) Brinton LA, Hoover R, Szklo M et al. Oral contraceptives and breast cancer. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 1982, 11:316-322.

(300) Brohet RM, Goldgar DE, Easton DF et al. Oral contraceptives and breast cancer risk in the International BRCA1/2 Carrier Cohort Study: A report from EMBRACE, GENEPSO, GEO-HEBON, and the IBCCS Collaborating Group. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 2007, 25 :3831-3836.

(301) Claus EB, Stowe M, Carter D. Oral contraceptives and the risk of ductal breast carcinoma in situ. *Breast Cancer Research and Treatment*, 2003, 81:129-136.

(302) Collaborative Group on Hormonal Factors in Breast Cancer. Familial breast cancer: collaborative reanalysis of individual data from 52 epidemiological studies including 58 209 women with breast cancer and 101 986 women without the disease. *Lancet*, 2001, 358:1389-1399.

(303) Grabrick DM, Hartmann LC, Cerhan JR et al. Risk of breast cancer with oral contraceptive use in women with a family history of breast cancer [comment]. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 2000, 284:1791-1798.

(304) Gronwald J, Byrski T, Huzarski T et al. Influence of selected lifestyle factors on breast and ovarian cancer risk in BRCA1 mutation carriers from Poland. *Breast Cancer Research and Treatment*, 2006, 95:105-109.

(305) Haile RW, Thomas DC, McGuire V et al. BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers, oral contraceptive use, and breast cancer before age 50. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 2006, 15:1863-1870.

(306) Harris NV, Weiss NS, Francis AM et al. Breast cancer in relation to patterns of oral contraceptive use. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 1982, 116:643-651.

(307) Hennekens CH, Speizer FE, Lipnick RJ et al. A case-control study of oral contraceptive use and breast cancer. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 1984, 72:39-42.

(308) Jernstrom H, Loman N, Johannsson OT et al. Impact of teenage oral contraceptive use in a population-based series of early-onset breast cancer cases who have undergone BRCA mutation testing. *European Journal of Cancer*, 2005, 41:2312-2320.

(309) Marchbanks PA, McDonald JA, Wilson HG et al. Oral contraceptives and the risk of breast cancer. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 2002, 346:2025-2032.

(310) Milne RL, Knight JA, John EM et al. Oral contraceptive use and risk of early-onset breast cancer in carriers and noncarriers of BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 2005, 14 :350-356.

(311) Narod S, Dube MP, Klijn J et al. Oral contraceptives and the risk of breast cancer in BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 2002, 94:1773-1779.

(312) Rosenberg L, Palmer JR, Rao RS et al. Case-control study of oral contraceptive use and risk of breast cancer. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 1996, 143:25-37.

(313) Silvera SAN, Miller AB, Rohan TE. Oral contraceptive use and risk of breast cancer among women with a family history of breast cancer: a prospective cohort study. *Cancer Causes and Control*, 2005, 16:1059-1063.

(314) Ursin G, Henderson BE, Haile RW et al. Does oral contraceptive use increase the risk of breast cancer in women with BRCA1/BRCA2 mutations more than in other women? *Cancer Research*, 1997, 57:3678-3681.

(315) Ursin G, Ross RK, Sullivan-Halley J et al. Use of oral contraceptives and risk of breast cancer in young women. *Breast Cancer Research and Treatment*, 1998, 50:175-184.

(316) Gaffield ME, Culwell KR, Ravi A. Oral contraceptives and family history of breast cancer. *Contraception*, 2009; 80:372-380

(317) Determinants of cervical Chlamydia trachomatis infection in Italy. The Italian MEGIC Group. *Genitourinary Medicine*, 1993, 69:123-125.

(318) Ackers JP, Lumsden WH, Catterall RD et al. Antitrichomonal antibody in the vaginal secretions of women infected with *T. vaginalis*. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1975, 51:319-323.

(319) Acosta-Cazares B, Ruiz-Maya L, Escobedo dlP. Prevalence and risk factors for *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection in low-income rural and suburban populations of Mexico. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 1996, 23:283-288.

(320) Addiss DG, Vaughn ML, Holzhueter MA et al. Selective screening for Chlamydia trachomatis infection in nonurban family planning clinics in Wisconsin. *Family Planning Perspectives*, 1987, 19:252-256.

(321) Arya OP, Mallinson H, Goddard AD. Epidemiological and clinical correlates of chlamydial infection of the cervix. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1981, 57:118-124.

(322) Austin H, Louv WC, Alexander WJ. A case-control study of spermicides and gonorrhea. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1984, 251:2822-2824.

(323) Avonts D, Sercu M, Heyerick P et al. Incidence of uncomplicated genital infections in women using oral contraception or an intrauterine device: a prospective study. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 1990, 17:23-29.

(324) Baeten JM, Nyange PM, Richardson BA et al. Hormonal contraception and risk of sexually transmitted disease acquisition: results from a prospective study. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2001, 185:380-385.

(325) Barbone F, Austin H, Louv WC et al. A follow-up study of methods of contraception, sexual activity, and rates of trichomoniasis, candidiasis, and bacterial vaginosis. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1990, 163:510-514.

(326) Barnes RC, Katz BP, Rolfs RT et al. Quantitative culture of endocervical *Chlamydia trachomatis*. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology*, 1990, 28:774-780.

(327) Berger GS, Keith L, Moss W. Prevalence of gonorrhoea among women using various methods of contraception. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1975, 51:307-309.

(328) Bhattacharyya MN, Jephcott AE. Diagnosis of gonorrhea in women – influence of the contraceptive pill. *Journal of the American Venereal Disease Association*, 1976, 2:21-24.

(329) Blum M, Pery J, Kitai E. The link between contraceptive methods and *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection. *Advances in Contraception*, 1988, 4:233-239.

(330) Bontis J, Vavilis D, Panidis D et al. Detection of Chlamydia trachomatis in asymptomatic women: relationship to history, contraception, and cervicitis. *Advances in Contraception*, 1994, 10:309-315.

(331) Bramley M, Kinghorn G. Do oral contraceptives inhibit *Trichomonas vaginalis*? *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 1979, 6:261-263.

(332) Bro F, Juul S. Predictors of *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection in women in general practice. *Family Practice*, 1990, 7:138-143.

(333) Burns DC, Darougar S, Thin RN et al. Isolation of *Chlamydia* from women attending a clinic for sexually transmitted disease. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1975, 51:314-318.

(334) Ceruti M, Canestrelli M, Condemi V et al. Methods of contraception and rates of genital infections. *Clinical & Experimental Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1994, 21:119-123.

(335) Chacko M, Lovchik J. *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection in sexually active adolescents: prevalence and risk factors. *Pediatrics*, 1984, 73:836-840.

(336) Cottingham J, Hunter D. Chlamydia trachomatis and oral contraceptive use: a quantitative review. *Genitourinary Medicine*, 1992, 68:209-216.

(337) Crowley T, Horner P, Hughes A et al. Hormonal factors and the laboratory detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in women: implications for screening? *International Journal of STD & AIDS*, 1997, 8:25-31.

(338) Edwards D, Phillips D, Stancombe S. *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection at a family planning clinic. *New Zealand Medical Journal*, 1985, 98:333-335.

(339) Evans BA, Kell PD, Bond RA et al. Predictors of seropositivity to herpes simplex virus type 2 in women. *International Journal of STD & AIDS*, 2003, 14:30-36.

(340) Evans DL, Demetriou E, Shalaby H et al. Detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in adolescent females using direct immunofluorescence. *Clinical Pediatrics*, 1988, 27:223-228.

(341) Fish AN, Fairweather DV, Oriel JD et al. *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection in a gynaecology clinic population: identification of high-risk groups and the value of contact tracing. *European Journal of Obstetrics, Gynecology, & Reproductive Biology*, 1989, 31:67-74.

(342) Fouts AC, Kraus SJ. *Trichomonas vaginalis*: reevaluation of its clinical presentation and laboratory diagnosis. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1980, 141:137-143.

(343) Fraser JJ, Jr., Rettig PJ, Kaplan DW. Prevalence of cervical *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in female adolescents. *Pediatrics*, 1983, 71:333-336.

(344) Gertig DM, Kapiga SH, Shao JF et al. Risk factors for sexually transmitted diseases among women attending family planning clinics in Dar-es-Salaam, Tanzania. *Genitourinary Medicine*, 1997, 73:39-43.

(345) Green J, de Gonzalez AB, Smith JS et al. Human papillomavirus infection and use of oral contraceptives. *Br J Cancer*, 2003, 88:1713-1720.

(346) Griffiths M, Hindley D. Gonococcal pelvic inflammatory disease, oral contraceptives, and cervical mucus. *Genitourinary Medicine*, 1985, 61:67.

(347) Han Y, Morse DL, Lawrence CE et al. Risk profile for *Chlamydia* infection in women from public health clinics in New York State. *Journal of Community Health*, 1993, 18:1-9.

(348) Handsfield HH, Jasman LL, Roberts PL et al. Criteria for selective screening for *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection in women attending family planning clinics. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1986, 255:1730-1734.

(349) Hanna NF, Taylor-Robinson D, Kalodiki-Karamanoli M et al. The relation between vaginal pH and the microbiological status in vaginitis. *British Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 1985, 92:1267-1271.

(350) Harrison HR, Costin M, Meder JB et al. Cervical *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection in university women: relationship to history, contraception, ectopy, and cervicitis. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1985, 153:244-251.

(351) Hart G. Factors associated with genital chlamydial and gonococcal infection in females. *Genitourinary Medicine*, 1992, 68:217-220.

(352) Herrmann B, Espinoza F, Villegas RR et al. Genital chlamydial infection among women in Nicaragua: validity of direct fluorescent antibody testing, prevalence, risk factors and clinical manifestations. *Genitourinary Medicine*, 1996, 72:20-26.

(353) Hewitt AB. Oral contraception among special clinic patients. With particular reference to the diagnosis of gonorrhoea. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1970, 46:106-107.

(354) Hilton AL, Richmond SJ, Milne JD et al. *Chlamydia* A in the female genital tract. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1974, 50:1-10.

(355) Hiltunen-Back E, Haikala O, Kautiainen H et al. A nationwide sentinel clinic survey of *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection in Finland. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 2001, 28:252-258.

(356) Jacobson DL, Peralta L, Farmer M et al. Relationship of hormonal contraception and cervical ectopy as measured by computerized planimetry to chlamydial infection in adolescents. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 2000, 27:313-319.

(357) Jaffe LR, Siqueira LM, Diamond SB et al. *Chlamydia trachomatis* detection in adolescents. A comparison of direct specimen and tissue culture methods. *Journal of Adolescent Health Care*, 1986, 7:401-404.

(358) Jick H, Hannan MT, Stergachis A et al. Vaginal spermicides and gonorrhea. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1982, 248:1619-1621.

(359) Johannisson G, Karamustafa A, Brorson J. Influence of copper salts on gonococci. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1976, 52:176-177.

(360) Keith L, Berer GS, Moss W. Cervical gonorrhea in women using different methods of contraception. *Journal of the American Venereal Disease Association*, 1976, 3:17-19.

(361) Kinghorn GR, Waugh MA. Oral contraceptive use and prevalence of infection with *Chlamydia trachomatis* in women. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1981, 57:187-190.

(362) Lavreys L, Chohan B, Ashley R et al. Human herpesvirus 8: seroprevalence and correlates in prostitutes in Mombasa, Kenya. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 2003, 187:359-363.

(363) Lefevre JC, Averous S, Bauriaud R et al. Lower genital tract infections in women: comparison of clinical and epidemiologic findings with microbiology. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 1988, 15:110-113.

(364) Louv WC, Austin H, Perlman J et al. Oral contraceptive use and the risk of chlamydial and gonococcal infections. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1989, 160:396-402.

(365) Lowe TL, Kraus SJ. Quantitation of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* from women with gonorrhea. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1976, 133:621-626.

(366) Lycke E, Lowhagen GB, Hallhagen G et al. The risk of transmission of genital *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection is less than that of genital *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infection. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 1980, 7:6-10.

(367) Macaulay ME, Riordan T, James JM et al. A prospective study of genital infections in a family-planning clinic. 2. Chlamydia infection–the identification of a high-risk group. *Epidemiology & Infection*, 1990, 104:55-61.

(368) Magder LS, Harrison HR, Ehret JM et al. Factors related to genital Chlamydia trachomatis and its diagnosis by culture in a sexually transmitted disease clinic. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 1988, 128:298-308.

(369) Magder LS, Klontz KC, Bush LH et al. Effect of patient characteristics on performance of an enzyme immunoassay for detecting cervical *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology*, 1990, 28:781-784.

(370) Masse R, Laperriere H, Rousseau H et al. *Chlamydia trachomatis* cervical infection: prevalence and determinants among women presenting for routine gynecologic examination. *CMAJ Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 1991, 145:953-961.

(371) McCormack WM, Reynolds GH. Effect of menstrual cycle and method of contraception on recovery of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1982, 247:1292-1294.

(372) Morrison CS, Bright P, Wong EL et al. Hormonal contraceptive use, cervical ectopy, and the acquisition of cervical infections. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 2004, 31:561-567.

(373) Nayyar KC, O'Neill JJ, Hambling MH et al. Isolation of *Chlamydia trachomatis* from women attending a clinic for sexually transmitted diseases. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1976, 52:396-398.

(374) Oh MK, Feinstein RA, Soileau EJ et al. *Chlamydia trachomatis* cervical infection and oral contraceptive use among adolescent girls. *Journal of Adolescent Health Care*, 1989, 10:376-381.

(375) Oriel JD, Powis PA, Reeve P et al. Chlamydial infections of the cervix. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1974, 50:11-16.

(376) Oriel JD, Johnson AL, Barlow D et al. Infection of the uterine cervix with *Chlamydia trachomatis*. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1978, 137:443-451.

(377) Paavonen J, Vesterinen E. *Chlamydia trachomatis* in cervicitis and urethritis in women. *Scandinavian Journal of Infectious Diseases - Supplementum*, 1982, 32:45-54.

(378) Park BJ, Stergachis A, Scholes D et al. Contraceptive methods and the risk of *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection in young women. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 1995, 142:771-778.

(379) Pereira LH, Embil JA, Haase DA et al. Cytomegalovirus infection among women attending a sexually transmitted disease clinic: association with clinical symptoms and other sexually transmitted diseases. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 1990, 131:683-692.

(380) Rahm VA, Odlind V, Pettersson R. *Chlamydia trachomatis* in sexually active teenage girls. Factors related to genital chlamydial infection: a prospective study. *Genitourinary Medicine*, 1991, 67:317-321.

(381) Reed BD, Huck W, Zazove P. Differentiation of *Gardnerella vaginalis*, *Candida albicans*, and *Trichomonas vaginalis* infections of the vagina. *Journal of Family Practice*, 1989, 28:673-680.

(382) Ripa KT, Svensson L, Mardh PA et al. *Chlamydia trachomatis* cervicitis in gynecologic outpatients. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1978, 52:698-702.

(383) Ruijs GJ, Kauer FM, van Gijssel PM et al. Direct immunofluorescence for *Chlamydia trachomatis* on urogenital smears for epidemiological purposes. *European Journal of Obstetrics, Gynecology, & Reproductive Biology*, 1988, 27:289-297.

(384) Schachter J, Stoner E, Moncada J. Screening for chlamydial infections in women attending family planning clinics. *Western Journal of Medicine*, 1983, 138:375-379.

(385) Sellors JW, Karwalajtys TL, Kaczorowski J et al. Incidence, clearance and predictors of human papillomavirus infection in women. *CMAJ Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 2003, 168:421-425.

(386) Sessa R, Latino MA, Magliano EM et al. Epidemiology of urogenital infections caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis* and outline of characteristic features of patients at risk. *Journal of Medical Microbiology*, 1994, 41:168-172.

(387) Shafer MA, Beck A, Blain B et al. *Chlamydia trachomatis*: important relationships to race, contraception, lower genital tract infection, and Papanicolaou smear. *Journal of Pediatrics*, 1984, 104:141-146.

(388) Smith JS, Herrero R, Munoz N et al. Prevalence and risk factors for herpes simplex virus type 2 infection among middle-age women in Brazil and the Philippines. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 2001, 28:187-194.

(389) Staerfelt F, Gundersen TJ, Halsos AM et al. A survey of genital infections in patients attending a clinic for sexually transmitted diseases. *Scandinavian Journal of Infectious Diseases - Supplementum*, 1983, 40:53-57.

(390) Svensson L, Westrom L, Mardh PA. *Chlamydia trachomatis* in women attending a gynaecological outpatient clinic with lower genital tract infection. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1981, 57:259-262.

(391) Tait IA, Rees E, Hobson D et al. Chlamydial infection of the cervix in contacts of men with nongonococcal urethritis. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1980, 56:37-45.

(392) Vaccarella S, Herrero R, Dai M et al. Reproductive factors, oral contraceptive use, and human papillomavirus infection: pooled analysis of the IARC HPV prevalence surveys. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers and Prevention*, 2006, 15:2148-2153.

(393) Willmott FE, Mair HJ. Genital herpesvirus infection in women attending a venereal diseases clinic. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1978, 54:341-343.

(394) Winer RL, Lee SK, Hughes JP et al. Genital human papillomavirus infection: incidence and risk factors in a cohort of female university students.[erratum appears in Am J Epidemiol. 2003 May 1;157(9):858]. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 2003, 157:218-226.

(395) Winter L, Goldy AS, Baer C. Prevalence and epidemiologic correlates of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in rural and urban populations. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 1990, 17:30-36.

(396) Wolinska WH, Melamed MR. *Herpes genitalis* in women attending Planned Parenthood of New York City. *Acta Cytologica*, 1970, 14:239-242.

(397) Woolfitt JM, Watt L. Chlamydial infection of the urogenital tract in promiscuous and non-promiscuous women. *British Journal of Venereal Diseases*, 1977, 53:93-95.

(398) Comparison of female to male and male to female transmission of HIV in 563 stable couples. European Study Group on Heterosexual Transmission of HIV.[comment]. *British Medical Journal*, 1992, 304:809-813.

(399) Aklilu M, Messele T, Tsegaye A et al. Factors associated with HIV-1 infection among sex workers of Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. *AIDS*, 2001, 15:87-96.

(400) Allen S, Serufilira A, Gruber V et al. Pregnancy and contraception use among urban Rwandan women after HIV testing and counseling. *American Journal of Public Health*, 1993, 83:705-710.

(401) Baeten JM, Benki S, Chohan V et al. Hormonal contraceptive use, herpes simplex virus infection, and risk of HIV-1 acquisition among Kenyan women. *AIDS*, 2007, 21:1771-1777.

(402) Chao A, Bulterys M, Musanganire F et al. Risk factors associated with prevalent HIV-1 infection among pregnant women in Rwanda. National University of Rwanda-Johns Hopkins University AIDS Research Team. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 1994, 23:371-380.

(403) Cohen CR, Duerr A, Pruithithada N et al. Bacterial vaginosis and HIV seroprevalence among female commercial sex workers in Chiang Mai, Thailand. *AIDS*, 1995, 9:1093-1097.

(404) Criniti A, Mwachari CW, Meier AS et al. Association of hormonal contraception and HIV-seroprevalence in Nairobi, Kenya. *AIDS*, 2003, 17:2667-2669.

(405) de Vincenzi I. A longitudinal study of human immunodeficiency virus transmission by heterosexual partners. European Study Group on Heterosexual Transmission of HIV.[comment]. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 1994, 331:341-346.

(406) Ellerbrock TV, Lieb S, Harrington PE et al. Heterosexually transmitted human immunodeficiency virus infection among pregnant women in a rural Florida community.[comment]. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 1992, 327:1704-1709.

(407) Gray JA, Dore GJ, Li Y et al. HIV-1 infection among female commercial sex workers in rural Thailand. *AIDS*, 1997, 11:89-94.

(408) Guimaraes MD, Munoz A, Boschi-Pinto C et al. HIV infection among female partners of seropositive men in Brazil. Rio de Janeiro Heterosexual Study Group. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 1995, 142:538-547.

(409) Hira SK, Kamanga J, Macuacua R et al. Oral contraceptive use and HIV infection. *International Journal of STD & AIDS*, 1990, 1:447-448.

(410) Kapiga SH, Shao JF, Lwihula GK et al. Risk factors for HIV infection among women in Dar-es-Salaam, Tanzania. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*, 1994, 7:301-309.

(411) Kapiga SH, Lyamuya EF, Lwihula GK et al. The incidence of HIV infection among women using family planning methods in Dar es Salaam, Tanzania. *AIDS*, 1998, 12:75-84.

(412) Kilmarx PH, Limpakarnjanarat K, Mastro TD et al. HIV-1 seroconversion in a prospective study of female sex workers in northern Thailand: continued high incidence among brothel-based women. *AIDS*, 1998, 12:1889-1898.

(413) Kunanusont C, Foy HM, Kreiss JK et al. HIV-1 subtypes and male-to-female transmission in Thailand. *Lancet*, 1995, 345:1078-1083.

(414) Laga M, Manoka A, Kivuvu M et al. Non-ulcerative sexually transmitted diseases as risk factors for HIV-1 transmission in women: results from a cohort study.[comment]. *AIDS*, 1993, 7:95-102.

(415) Lavreys L, Baeten JM, Martin HL, Jr. et al. Hormonal contraception and risk of HIV-1 acquisition: results of a 10-year prospective study. *AIDS*, 2004, 18:695-697.

(416) Limpakarnjanarat K, Mastro TD, Saisorn S et al. HIV-1 and other sexually transmitted infections in a cohort of female sex workers in Chiang Rai, Thailand. *Sexually Transmitted Infections*, 1999, 75:30-35.

(417) Martin HL, Jr., Nyange PM, Richardson BA et al. Hormonal contraception, sexually transmitted diseases, and risk of heterosexual transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1998, 178:1053-1059.

(418) Mati JK, Hunter DJ, Maggwa BN et al. Contraceptive use and the risk of HIV infection in Nairobi, Kenya. *International Journal of Gynaecology & Obstetrics*, 1995, 48:61-67.

(419) Morrison CS, Richardson BA, Mmiro F et al. Hormonal contraception and the risk of HIV acquisition. *AIDS*, 2007, 21:85-95.

(420) Moss GB, Clemetson D, D'Costa L et al. Association of cervical ectopy with heterosexual transmission of human immunodeficiency virus: results of a study of couples in Nairobi, Kenya. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1991, 164:588-591.

(421) Myer L, Denny L, Wright TC et al. Prospective study of hormonal contraception and women's risk of HIV infection in South Africa. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 2007, 36:166-174.

(422) Nagachinta T, Duerr A, Suriyanon V et al. Risk factors for HIV-1 transmission from HIV-seropositive male blood donors to their regular female partners in northern Thailand. *AIDS*, 1997, 11:1765-1772.

(423) Nicolosi A, Correa Leite ML, Musicco M et al. The efficiency of male-to-female and female-to-male sexual transmission of the human immunodeficiency virus: a study of 730 stable couples. Italian Study Group on HIV Heterosexual Transmission.[comment]. *Epidemiology*, 1994, 5:570-575.

(424) Nzila N, Laga M, Thiam MA et al. HIV and other sexually transmitted diseases among female prostitutes in Kinshasa. *AIDS*, 1991, 5:715-721.

(425) Pineda JA, Aguado I, Rivero A et al. HIV-1 infection among non-intravenous drug user female prostitutes in Spain. No evidence of evolution to pattern II. *AIDS*, 1992, 6:1365-1369.

(426) Plourde PJ, Plummer FA, Pepin J et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection in women attending a sexually transmitted diseases clinic in Kenya.[comment]. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1992, 166:86-92.

(427) Plummer FA, Simonsen JN, Cameron DW et al. Cofactors in male-female sexual transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1.[comment]. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1991, 163:233-239.

(428) Rehle T, Brinkmann UK, Siraprapasiri T et al. Risk factors of HIV-1 infection among female prostitutes in Khon Kaen, Northeast Thailand. *Infection*, 1992, 20:328-331.

(429) Saracco A, Musicco M, Nicolosi A et al. Man-to-woman sexual transmission of HIV: longitudinal study of 343 steady partners of infected men. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*, 1993, 6:497-502.

(430) Simonsen JN, Plummer FA, Ngugi EN et al. HIV infection among lower socioeconomic strata prostitutes in Nairobi. *AIDS*, 1990, 4:139-144.

(431) Sinei SK, Fortney JA, Kigondu CS et al. Contraceptive use and HIV infection in Kenyan family planning clinic attenders. *International Journal of STD & AIDS*, 1996, 7:65-70.

(432) Siraprapasiri T, Thanprasertsuk S, Rodklay A et al. Risk factors for HIV among prostitutes in Chiangmai, Thailand. *AIDS*, 1991, 5:579-582.

(433) Spence MR, Robbins SM, Polansky M et al. Seroprevalence of human immunodeficiency virus type I (HIV-1) antibodies in a family-planning population. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 1991, 18:143-145.

(434) Taneepanichskul S, Phuapradit W, Chaturachinda K. Association of contraceptives and HIV-1 infection in Thai female commercial sex workers. *Australian & New Zealand Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 1997, 37:86-88.

(435) Temmerman M, Chomba EN, Ndinya-Achola J et al. Maternal human immunodeficiency virus-1 infection and pregnancy outcome. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1994, 83:495-501.

(436) Ungchusak K, Rehle T, Thammapornpilap P et al. Determinants of HIV infection among female commercial sex workers in northeastern Thailand: results from a longitudinal study.[erratum appears in *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes & Human Retrovirology* 1998,18:192]. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes & Human Retrovirology*, 1996, 12:500-507.

(437) Allen S, Stephenson R, Weiss H et al. Pregnancy, hormonal contraceptive use, and HIV-related death in Rwanda. *Journal of Women's Health (Larchmont)*, 2007, 16:1017-1027.

(438) Cejtin HE, Jacobson L, Springer G et al. Effect of hormonal contraceptive use on plasma HIV-1-RNA levels among HIV-infected women. *AIDS*, 2003, 17:1702-1704.

(439) Clark RA, Kissinger P, Williams T. Contraceptive and sexually transmitted diseases protection among adult and adolescent women infected with human immunodeficiency virus. *International Journal of STD & AIDS*, 1996, 7:439-442.

(440) Clark RA, Thrall KP, Amedee AM et al. Lack of association between genital tract HIV-1 RNA shedding and hormonal contraceptive use in a cohort of Louisiana women. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 2007, 34:870-872.

(441) Clemetson DB, Moss GB, Willerford DM et al. Detection of HIV DNA in cervical and vaginal secretions. Prevalence and correlates among women in Nairobi, Kenya. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1993, 269:2860-2864.

(442) European Study Group on Heterosexual Transmission of HIV. Comparison of female to male and male to female transmission of HIV in 563 stable couples. *British Medical Journal*, 1992, 304:809-813.

(443) Kaul R, Kimani J, Nagelkerke NJ et al. Risk factors for genital ulcerations in Kenyan sex workers. The role of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 1997, 24:387-392.

(444) Kilmarx PH, Limpakarnjanarat K, Kaewkungwal J et al. Disease progression and survival with human immunodeficiency virus type 1 subtype E infection among female sex workers in Thailand. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 2000, 181:1598-1606.

(445) Kovacs A, Wasserman SS, Burns D et al. Determinants of HIV-1 shedding in the genital tract of women. *Lancet*, 2001, 358:1593-1601.

(446) Kreiss J, Willerford DM, Hensel M et al. Association between cervical inflammation and cervical shedding of human immunodeficiency virus DNA. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1994, 170:1597-1601.

(447) Lavreys L, Chohan V, Overbaugh J et al. Hormonal contraception and risk of cervical infections among HIV-1-seropositive Kenyan women. *AIDS*, 2004, 18:2179-2184.

(448) Mostad SB, Overbaugh J, DeVange DM et al. Hormonal contraception, vitamin A deficiency, and other risk factors for shedding of HIV-1 infected cells from the cervix and vagina. *Lancet*, 1997, 350:922-927.

(449) Richardson BA, Otieno PA, Mbori-Ngacha D et al. Hormonal contraception and HIV-1 disease progression among postpartum Kenyan women. *AIDS*, 2007, 21:749-753.

(450) Seck K, Samb N, Tempesta S et al. Prevalence and risk factors of cervicovaginal HIV shedding among HIV-1 and HIV-2 infected women in Dakar, Senegal. *Sexually Transmitted Infections*, 2001, 77:190-193.

(451) Stringer EM, Kaseba C, Levy J et al. A randomized trial of the intrauterine contraceptive device vs. hormonal contraception in women who are infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2007, 197:144-148.

(452) Taneepanichskul S, Intaraprasert S, Phuapradit W et al. Use of Norplant implants in asymptomatic HIV-1 infected women. *Contraception*, 1997, 55:205-207.

(453) Taneepanichskul S, Tanprasertkul C. Use of Norplant implants in the immediate postpartum period among asymptomatic HIV-1-positive mothers. *Contraception*, 2001, 64:39-41.

(454) Wang CC, McClelland RS, Overbaugh J et al. The effect of hormonal contraception on genital tract shedding of HIV-1. *AIDS*, 2004, 18:205-209.

(455) el Raghy I, et al. Contraceptive steroid concentrations in women with early active schistosomiasis: lack of effect of antischistosomal drugs. *Contraception*, 1986, 33:373-377.

(456) Gad-el-Mawla N, Abdallah A. Liver function in bilharzial females receiving contraceptive pills. *Acta Hepato-Splenologica*, 1969, 16:308-310.

(457) Gad-el-Mawla N, et al. Plasma lipids and lipoproteins in bilharzial females during oral contraceptive therapy. *Journal of Egyptian Medical Association*, 1972, 55:137-147.

(458) Shaaban MM, et al. Effects of oral contraception on liver function tests and serum proteins in women with active schistosomiasis. *Contraception*, 1982, 26:75-82.

(459) Shaaban MM, et al. Effective of oral contraception on serum bile acid. *International Journal of Gynaecology & Obstetrics*, 1984, 22:111-115.

(460) Sy FS, et al. Effect of oral contraceptive on liver function tests of women with schistosomiasis in the Philippines. *Contraception*, 1986, 34:283-294.

(461) Tagy AH, et al. The effect of low-dose combined oral contraceptive pills versus injectable contraceptive (Depo Provera) on liver function tests of women with compensated bilharzial liver fibrosis. *Contraception*, 2001, 64:173-176.

(462) Beck P, Wells SA. Comparison of the mechanisms underlying carbohydrate intolerance in subclinical diabetic women during pregnancy and during post-partum oral contraceptive steroid treatment. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism*, 1969, 29:807-818.

(463) Kjos SL, Peters RK, Xiang A et al. Contraception and the risk of type 2 diabetes mellitus in Latina women with prior gestational diabetes mellitus. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1998, 280:533-538.

(464) Kung AW, Ma JT, Wong VC et al. Glucose and lipid metabolism with triphasic oral contraceptives in women with history of gestational diabetes. *Contraception*, 1987, 35:257-269.

(465) Radberg T, Gustafson A, Skryten A et al. Metabolic studies in gestational diabetic women during contraceptive treatment: effects on glucose tolerance and fatty acid composition of serum lipids. *Gynecologic and Obstetric Investigation*, 1982, 13:17-29.

(466) Skouby SO, Molsted-Pedersen L, Kuhl C. Low dosage oral contraception in women with previous gestational diabetes. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1982, 59:325-328.

(467) Skouby SO, Andersen O, Kuhl C. Oral contraceptives and insulin receptor binding in normal women and those with previous gestational diabetes. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1986, 155:802-807.

(468) Skouby SO, Andersen O, Saurbrey N et al. Oral contraception and insulin sensitivity: in vivo assessment in normal women and women with previous gestational diabetes. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism*, 1987, 64:519-523.

(469) Xiang AH, Kawakubo M, Kjos SL et al. Long-acting injectable progestin contraception and risk of type 2 diabetes in Latino women with prior gestational diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Care*, 2006, 29:613-617.

(470) Kjos SL, Shoupe D, Douyan S et al. Effect of low-dose oral contraceptives on carbohydrate and lipid metabolism in women with recent gestational diabetes: results of a controlled, randomized, prospective study. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1990, 163:1822-1827.

(471) Radberg T, Gustafson A, Skryten A et al. Metabolic studies in women with previous gestational diabetes during contraceptive treatment: effects on serum lipids and high density lipoproteins. *Acta Endocrinologica (Copenhagen)*, 1982, 101:134-139.

(472) Skouby SO, Kuhl C, Molsted-Pedersen L et al. Triphasic oral contraception: metabolic effects in normal women and those with previous gestational diabetes. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1985, 153:495-500.

(473) Beck P, Arnett DM, Alsever RN et al. Effect of contraceptive steroids on arginine-stimulated glucagon and insulin secretion in women. II. Carbohydrate and lipid physiology in insulin-dependent diabetics. *Metabolism*, 1976, 25:23-31.

(474) Diab KM, Zaki MM. Contraception in diabetic women: comparative metabolic study of norplant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate, low dose oral contraceptive pill and CuT380A. *Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecological Research*, 2000, 26:17-26.

(475) Garg SK, Chase P, Marshall G et al. Oral contraceptives and renal and retinal complications in young women with insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1994, 271:1099-1102.

(476) Grigoryan OR, Grodnitskaya EE, Andreeva EN et al. Contraception in perimenopausal women with diabetes mellitus. *Gynecological Endocrinology*, 2006, 22:198-206.

(477) Margolis KL, Adami H-O, Luo J et al. A prospective study of oral contraceptive use and risk of myocardial infarction among Swedish women. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2007, 88:310-316.

(478) Petersen KR, Skouby SO, Sidelmann J et al. Assessment of endothelial function during oral contraception on women with insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *Metabolism*, 1994, 43:1379-1383.

(479) Petersen KR, Skouby SO, Jespersen J. Balance of coagulation activity with fibrinolysis during use of oral contraceptives in women with insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *International Journal of Fertility*, 1995, 40:105-111.

(480) Radberg T, Gustafson A, Skryten A et al. Oral contraception in diabetic women. A cross-over study on serum and high density lipoprotein (HDL) lipids and diabetes control during progestogen and combined estrogen/progestogen contraception. *Hormone Metabolism Research*, 1982, 14:61-65.

(481) Skouby SO, Jensen BM, Kuhl C et al. Hormonal contraception in diabetic women: acceptability and influence on diabetes control and ovarian function of a nonalkylated estrogen/progestogen compound. *Contraception*, 1985, 32:23-31.

(482) Skouby SO, Molsted-Petersen L, Kuhl C et al. Oral contraceptives in diabetic women: metabolic effects of four compounds with different estrogen/progestogen profiles. *Fertility & Sterility*, 1986, 46:858-864.

(483) Di Martino V, Lebray P, Myers RP et al. Progression of liver fibrosis in women infected with hepatitis C: Long-term benefit of estrogen exposure. *Hepatology*, 2004, 40:1426-1433.

(484) Libbrecht L, Craninx M, Nevens F et al. Predictive value of liver cell dysplasia for development of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with non-cirrhotic and cirrhotic chronic viral hepatitis. *Histopathology*, 2001, 39:66-73.

(485) Eisalo A, Konttinen A, Hietala O. Oral contraceptives after liver disease. *British Medical Journal*, 1971, 3:561-562.

(486) Peishan Wang, Zemin Lai, Jinlan Tang et al. Safety of hormonal steroid contraceptive use for hepatitis B virus carrier women. *Pharmacoepidemiology and Drug Safety*, 2000, 9:245-246.

(487) Shaaban MM, Hammad WA, Fathalla MF et al. Effects of oral contraception on liver function tests and serum proteins in women with past viral hepatitis. *Contraception*, 1982, 26:65-74.

(488) Schweitzer IL, Weiner JM, McPeak CM et al. Oral contraceptives in acute viral hepatitis. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1975, 233:979-980.

(489) Kapp N, Tilley IB, Curtis KM. The effects of hormonal contraceptive use among women with viral hepatistis or cirrhosis of the liver: a systematic review. *Contraception,* 2009; 80: 3812-386.

(490) D'halluin V, Vilgrain V, Pelletier G et al. [Natural history of focal nodular hyperplasia. A retrospective study of 44 cases]. *Gastroentérologie clinique et biologique*, 2001, 25:1008-1010.

(491) Mathieu D, Kobeiter H, Maison P et al. Oral contraceptive use and focal nodular hyperplasia of the liver. *Gastroenterology*, 2000, 118:560-564.

(492) Kapp N, Curtis KM. Hormonal contraceptive use among women with liver tumors: a systematic review. *Contraception,* 2009; 80: 387-390.

(493) Back DJ, Bates M, Bowden A et al. The interaction of Phenobarbital and other anticonvulsants with oral contraceptive steroid therapy. *Contraception*, 1980, 22:495-503.

(494) Doose DR, Wang S, Padmanabhan M et al. Effects of topiramate or carbamazepine on the pharmacokinetics of an oral contraceptive containing norethindrone and ethinyl estradiol in healthy obese and nonobese female subjects. *Epilepsia*, 2003, 44:540-549.

(495) Fattore C, Cipolla G, Gatti G et al. Induction of ethinylestradiol and levonorgestrel metabolism by oxcarbazepine in healthy women. *Epilepsia*, 1999, 40:783-787.

(496) Rosenfeld WE, Doose DR, Walker SA et al. Effect of topiramate on the pharmacokinetics of an oral contraceptive containing norethindrone and ethinyl estradiol in patients with epilepsy. *Epilepsia*, 1997, 38:317-323.

(497) Christensen J, Petrenaite V, Atterman J et al. Oral contraceptives induce lamotrigine metabolism: evidence from a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Epilepsia*, 2007, 48:484-489.

(498) Contin M, Albani F, Ambrosetto G et al. Variation in lamotrigine plasma concentrations with hormonal contraceptive monthly cycles in patients with epilepsy. *Epilepsia*, 2006, 47:1573-1575.

(499) Reimers A, Helde G, Brodtkorb E. Ethinyl estradiol, not progestogens, reduces lamotrigine serum concentrations. *Epilepsia*, 2005, 46:1414-1417.

(500) Sabers A, Buchholt JM, Uldall P et al. Lamotrigine plasma levels reduced by oral contraceptives. *Epilepsy Research*, 2001, 47:151-154.

(501) Sabers A, Ohman I, Christensen J et al. Oral contraceptives reduce lamotrigine plasma levels. *Neurology*, 2003, 61:570-571.

(502) Back DJ, Breckenridge AM, MacIver M et al. The effects of ampicillin on oral contraceptive steroids in women. *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 1982, 14:43-48.

(503) Back DJ, Grimmer SF, Orme ML et al. Evaluation of the Committee on Safety of Medicines yellow card reports on oral contraceptive-drug interactions with anticonvulsants and antibiotics. *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 1988, 25:527-532.

(504) Back DJ, Tjia J, Martin C et al. The lack of interaction between temafloxacin and combined oral contraceptive steroids. *Contraception*, 1991, 43:317-323.

(505) Bacon JF, Shenfield GM. Pregnancy attributable to interaction between tetracycline and oral contraceptives. *British Medical Journal*, 1980, 280:293.

(506) Bainton R. Interaction between antibiotic therapy and contraceptive medication. *Oral Surgery, Oral Medicine, and Oral Pathology*, 1986, 61:453-455.

(507) Bollen M. Use of antibiotics when taking the oral contraceptive pill. [comment]. *Australian Family Physician*, 1995, 24:928-929.

(508) Bromham DR. Knowledge and use of secondary contraception among patients requesting termination of pregnancy. *British Medical Journal*, 1993, 306:556-557.

(509) Cote J. Interaction of griseofulvin and oral contraceptives. [comment]. *Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology*, 1990, 22:124-125.

(510) Csemiczky G, Alvendal C, Landgren BM. Risk for ovulation in women taking a low-dose oral contraceptive (Microgynon) when receiving antibacterial treatment with a fluoroquinoline (ofloxacin). *Advances in Contraception*, 1996, 12:101-109.

(511) de Groot AC, Eshuis H, Stricker BH. [Inefficiency of oral contraception during use of minocycline]. [Dutch]. *Nederlands Tijedschrift voor Geneeskunde*, 1990, 134:1227-1229.

(512) DeSano EA Jr, Hurley SC. Possible interactions of antihistamines and antibiotics with oral contraceptive effectiveness. *Fertility & Sterility*, 1982, 37:853-854.

(513) Donley TG, Smith RF, Roy B. Reduced oral contraceptive effectiveness with concurrent antibiotic use: a protocol for prescribing antibiotics to women of childbearing age. *Compendium*, 1990, 11:392-396.

(514) Friedman CI, Huneke AL, Kim MH et al. The effect of ampicillin on oral contraceptive effectiveness. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1980, 55:33-37.

(515) Grimmer SF, Allen WL, Back DJ et al. The effect of cotrimoxazole on oral contraceptive steroids in women. *Contraception*, 1983, 28:53-59.

(516) Helms SE, Bredle DL, Zajic J et al. Oral contraceptive failure rates and oral antibiotics. *Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology*, 1997, 36:705-710.

(517) Hempel E, Bohm W, Carol W et al. [Enzyme induction by drugs and hormonal contraception]. [German]. *Zentralblatt fur Gynakologie*, 1973, 95:1451-1457.

(518) Hempel E, Zorn C, Graf K. [Effect of chemotherapy agents and antibiotics on hormonal contraception]. [German]. *Zeitschrift fur Arztliche Forbildung (Jena)*, 1978, 72:924-926.

(519) Hetenyi G. Possible interactions between antibiotics and oral contraceptives. *Therapia Hungarica (English edition)*, 1989, 37:86-89.

(520) Hughes BR, Cunliffe WJ. Interactions between the oral contraceptive pill and antibiotics. [comment]. *British Journal of Dermatology*, 1990, 122:717-718.

(521) Joshi JV, Joshi UM, Sankholi GM et al. A study of interaction of low-dose combination oral contraceptive with ampicillin and metronidazole. *Contraception*, 1980, 22:643-652.

(522) Kakouris H, Kovacs GT. Pill failure and nonuse of secondary precautions. *British Journal of Family Planning*, 1992, 18:41-44.

(523) Kakouris H, Kovacs GT. How common are predisposing factors to pill failure among pill users? *British Journal of Family Planning*, 1994, 20:33-35.

(524) Kovacs GT, Riddoch G, Duncombe P et al. Inadvertent pregnancies in oral contraceptive users. *Medical Journal of Australia*, 1989, 150:549-551.

(525) Lequeux A. [Pregnancy under oral contraceptives after treatment with tetracycline]. [French]. *Louvain Medical*, 1980, 99:413-414.

(526) London BM, Lookingbill DP. Frequency of pregnancy in acne patients taking oral antibiotics and oral contraceptives. *Archives of Dermatology*, 1994, 130:392-393.

(527) Maggiolo F, Puricelli G, Dottorini M et al. The effects of ciprofloxacin on oral contraceptive steroid treatments. *Drugs Under Experimental and Clinical Research*, 1991, 17:451-454.

(528) Murphy AA, Zacur HA, Charache P et al. The effect of tetracycline on levels of oral contraceptives. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1991, 164:28-33.

(529) Neely JL, Abate M, Swinker M et al. The effect of doxycycline on serum levels of ethinyl estradiol, noretindrone, and endogenous progesterone. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1991, 77:416-420.

(530) Pillans PI, Sparrow MJ. Pregnancy associated with a combined oral contraceptive and itraconazole. [comment]. *New Zealand Medical Journal*, 1993, 106:436.

(531) Scholten PC, Droppert RM, Zwinkels MG et al. No interaction between ciprofloxacin and an oral contraceptive. *Antimicrobial Agents & Chemotherapy*, 1998, 42:3266-3268.

(532) Silber TJ. Apparent oral contraceptive failure associated with antibiotic administration. *Journal of Adolescent Health Care*, 1983, 4:287-289.

(533) Sparrow MJ. Pill method failures. *New Zealand Medical Journal*, 1987, 100:102-105.

(534) Sparrow MJ. Pregnancies in reliable pill takers. *New Zealand Medical Journal*, 1989, 102:575-577.

(535) Sparrow MJ. Pill method failures in women seeking abortion - fourteen years experience. *New Zealand Medical Journal*, 1998, 111:386-388.

(536) van Dijke CP, Weber JC. Interaction between oral contraceptives and griseofulvin. *British Medical Journal (Clinical research ed)*, 1984, 288:1125-1126.

(537) Wermeling DP, Chandler MH, Sides GD et al. Dirithromycin increases ethinyl estradiol clearance without allowing ovulation. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1995, 86:78-84.

(538) Young LK, Farquhar CM, McCowan LM et al. The contraceptive practices of women seeking termination of pregnancy in an Auckland clinic. *New Zealand Medical Journal*, 1994, 107:189-192.

(539) Abrams LS, Skee D, Natarajan J et al. Pharmocokinetic overview of Ortho Evra/Evra. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2002, 77:s3-s12.

(540) Dogterom P, van den Heuvel MW, Thomsen T. Absence of pharmacokinetic interactions of the combined contraceptive vaginal ring NuvaRing with oral amoxicillin or doxycycline in two randomized trials. *Clinical Pharmacokinetics*, 2005, 44:429-438.

(541) Devenport MH, Crook D, Wynn V et al. Metabolic effects of low-dose fluconazole in healthy female users and non-users of oral contraceptives. *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 1989, 27:851-859.

(542) Hilbert J, Messig M, Kuye O. Evaluation of interaction between fluconazole and an oral contraceptive in healthy women. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2001, 98:218-223.

(543) Kovacs I, Somos P, Hamori M. Examination of the potential interaction between ketoconazole (Nizoral) and oral contraceptives with special regard to products of low hormone content (Rigevidon, anteovin). *Therapia Hungarica (English edition)*, 1986, 34:167-170.

(544) Lunell NO, Pschera H, Zador G et al. Evaluation of the possible interaction of the antifungal triazole SCH 39304 with oral contraceptives in normal health women. *Gynecologic & Obstetric Investigation*, 1991, 32:91-97.

(545) McDaniel PA, Cladroney RD. Oral contraceptives and griseofulvin interactions. *Drug Intelligence & Clinical Pharmacy*, 1986, 20:384.

(546) Meyboom RH, van Puijenbroek EP, Vinks MH et al. Disturbance of withdrawal bleeding during concomitant use of itraconazole and oral contraceptives. *New Zealand Medical Journal*, 1997, 110:300.

(547) Rieth H, Sauerbrey N. [Interaction studies with fluconazole, a new tirazole antifungal drug]. [German]. *Wiener Medizinische Wochenschrift*, 1989, 139:370-374.

(548) Sinofsky FE, Pasquale SA. The effect of fluconazole on circulating ethinyl estradiol levels in women taking oral contraceptives. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1998, 178:300-304.

(549) van Puijenbroek EP, Feenstra J, Meyboom RH. [Pill cycle disturbance in simultaneous use of itraconazole and oral contraceptives]. [Dutch]. *Nederlands Tijedschrift voor Geneeskunde*, 1998, 142:146-149.

(550) van Puijenbroek EP, Egberts AC, Meyboom RH et al. Signalling possible drug-drug interactions in a spontaneous reporting system: delay of withdrawal bleeding during concomitant use of oral contraceptives and itraconazole. *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 1999, 47:689-693.

(551) Verhoeven CH, van den Heuvel MW, Mulders TM et al. The contraceptive vaginal ring, NuvaRing, and antimycotic comedication. *Contraception*, 2004, 69:129-132.

(552) Back DJ, Breckenridge AM, Grimmer SF et al. Pharmacokinetics of oral contraceptive steroids following the administration of the antimalarial drugs primaquine and chloroquine. *Contraception*, 1984, 30:289-295.

(553) Croft AM, Herxheimer A. Adverse effects of the antimalaria drug, mefloquine: due to primary liver damage with secondary thyroid involvement? *BMC Public Health*, 2002, 2:6.

(554) Karbwang J, Looareesuwan S, Back DJ et al. Effect of oral contraceptive steroids on the clinical course of malaria infection and on the pharmacokinetics of mefloquine in Thai women. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization*, 1988, 66:763-767.

(555) McGready R, Stepniewska K, Seaton E et al. Pregnancy and use of oral contraceptives reduces the biotransformation of proguanil to cycloguanil. *European Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 2003, 59:553-557.

(556) Wanwimolruk S, Kaewvichit S, Tanthayaphinant O et al. Lack of effect of oral contraceptive use on the pharmacokinetics of quinine. *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 1991, 31:179-181.

(557) Back DJ, Breckenridge AM, Crawford FE et al. The effect of rifampicin on norethisterone pharmacokinetics. *European Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 1979, 15:193-197.

(558) Back DJ, Breckenridge AM, Crawford FE et al. The effect of rifampicin on the pharmacokinetics of ethynylestradiol in women. *Contraception*, 1980, 21:135-143.

(559) Barditch-Crovo P, Trapnell CB, Ette E et al. The effects of rifampicin and rifabutin on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of a combination oral contraceptive. *Clinical Pharmacology & Therapeutics*, 1999, 65:428-438.

(560) Bolt HM, Bolt M, Kappus H. Interaction of rifampicin treatment with pharmacokinetics and metabolism of ethinyloestradiol in man. *Acta Endocrinologica (Copenhagen)*, 1977, 85:189-197.

(561) Gupta KC, Ali MY. Failure of oral contraceptive with rifampicin. *Medical Journal of Zambia*, 1981, 15:23.

(562) Hirsch A. [Letter: Sleeping pills]. [French]. *La Nouvelle presse médicale*, 1973, 2:2957.

(563) Hirsch A, Tillement JP, Chretien J. Effets contrariants de la rifampicine sur les contraceptifs oraux: a propos de trois grossesses non desiree chez trois malades. *Revue française des maladies respiratoires*, 1975, 2:174-182.

(564) Joshi JV, Joshi UM, Sankholi GM et al. A study of interaction of a low-dose combination oral contraceptive with antitubercular drugs. *Contraception*, 1980, 21:617-629.

(565) Kropp R. [Rifampicin and oral contraceptives (author's transl)]. [German]. *Praxis der Pneumologie vereinigt mit Der Tuberkulosearzt*, 1974, 28:270-272.

(566) LeBel M, Masson E, Guilbert E et al. Effects of rifabutin and rifampicin on the pharmacokinetics of ethinylestradiol and norethindrone. *Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 1998, 38:1042-1050.

(567) Meyer B, Muller F, Wessels P et al. A model to detect interactions between roxithromycin and oral contraceptives. *Clinical Pharmacology & Therapeutics*, 1990, 47:671-674.

(568) Nocke-Finke L, Breuer H, Reimers D. [Effects of rifampicin on the menstrual cycle and on oestrogen excretion in patients taking oral contraceptives]. [German]. *Deutsche medizinische Wochenschrift*, 1973, 98:1521-1523.

(569) Piguet B, Muglioni JF, Chaline G. [Letter: Oral contraception and rifampicin]. [French]. *La Nouvelle presse médicale*, 1975, 4:115-116.

(570) Reimers D, Jezek A. [the simultaneous use of rifampicin and other antitubercular agents with oral contraceptives]. [German]. *Praxis der Pneumologie vereinigt mit Der Tuberkulosearzt*, 1971, 25:255-262.

(571) Skolnick JL, Stoler BS, Katz DB et al. Rifampicin, oral contraceptives, and pregnancy. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 1976, 236:1382.

(572) Szoka PR, Edgren RA. Drug interactions with oral contraceptives: compilation and analysis of an adverse experience report database. *Fertility & Sterility*, 1988, 49:s31-s38.

PROGESTOGEN-ONLY CONTRACEPTIVES (POCs)

POCs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	POP	D/NE	LNG/ETG	
POP = progestogen-only pills **LNG/ETG** = levonorgestrel and etonogestrel implants **D/NE** = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) / norethisterone enantate (NET-EN)				
PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS AND REPRODUCTIVE HISTORY				
PREGNANCY	NA	NA	NA	NA = not applicable **Clarification**: Use of POCs is not required. There is no known harm to the woman, the course of her pregnancy, or the fetus if POCs are accidentally used during pregnancy. However, the relationship between DMPA use during pregnancy and its effects on the fetus remains unclear.
AGE				**Evidence**: Most studies have found that women lose bone mineral density while using DMPA, but regain bone mineral density after discontinuing DMPA. It is not known whether DMPA use among adolescents affects peak bone mass levels or whether adult women with long duration of DMPA use can regain bone mineral density to baseline levels before entering menopause. The relationship between DMPA-associated changes in bone mineral density during the reproductive years and future fracture risk is unknown.(1-41) Studies find no effect or have inconsistent results regarding the effects of POCs other than DMPA on bone mineral density.(42-54)
a) Menarche to < 18 years	1	2	1	
b) 18 to 45 years	1	1	1	
c) > 45 years	1	2	1	
PARITY				
a) Nulliparous	1	1	1	
b) Parous	1	1	1	
BREASTFEEDING				**Clarification**: There is concern that the neonate may be at risk of exposure to steroid hormones during the first six weeks postpartum. However, in many settings pregnancy morbidity and mortality risks are high, and access to services is limited. In such settings, POCs may be one of the few types of methods widely available and accessible to breastfeeding women immediately postpartum. **Evidence**: Direct evidence from clinical studies demonstrates no effect of POCs on breastfeeding performance (55-90) and generally demonstrates no harmful effects from exposure through breast milk in infants less than 6 weeks of age; however, these studies have been inadequately designed to determine whether a risk of either serious or subtle long-term effects exists.(55-59;67;69;71;73;80;83;84) Animal data suggest there is an effect of progesterone on the developing brain; whether similar effects occur following progestogen exposure in humans is unclear.(91-95)
a) < 6 weeks postpartum	3	3	3	
b) ≥ 6 weeks to < 6 months postpartum (primarily breastfeeding)	1	1	1	
c) ≥ 6 months postpartum	1	1	1	

POCs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	POP	D/NE	LNG/ETG	
POP = progestogen-only pills **LNG/ETG** = levonorgestrel and etonogestrel implants **D/NE** = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) / norethisterone enantate (NET-EN)				
POSTPARTUM (in non-breastfeeding women)				
a) < 21 days	1	1	1	
b) ≥ 21 days	1	1	1	
POST-ABORTION				**Clarification**: POCs may be started immediately post-abortion. **Evidence**: Limited evidence suggests that there are no adverse side effects when Norplant or NET-EN are initiated after first-trimester abortion.(96-99)
a) First trimester	1	1	1	
b) Second trimester	1	1	1	
c) Immediate post-septic abortion	1	1	1	
PAST ECTOPIC PREGNANCY*	2	1	1	
HISTORY OF PELVIC SURGERY	1	1	1	
SMOKING				
a) Age < 35 years	1	1	1	
b) Age ≥ 35 years				
(i) < 15 cigarettes/day	1	1	1	
ii) ≥ 15 cigarettes/day	1	1	1	
OBESITY				**Clarification**: There is no evidence of a differential weight gain among normal weight and obese adolescents who use NET-EN; this condition is classified as Category 1. However, the condition age < 18 years is classified as Category 2 due to evidence regarding potential effects of NET-EN on bone mineral density. **Evidence**: Obese adolescents who used DMPA were more likely to gain weight than obese non-users, obese COC users, and non-obese DMPA users. This relationship was not observed among adult women. One small study did not observe increases in weight gain among adolescent Norplant users by any category of baseline weight.(100-108)
a) ≥ 30 kg/m^2 BMI	1	1	1	
b) Menarche to < 18 years and ≥ 30 kg/m^2 BMI	1	DMPA=2 NET-EN=1	1	
BLOOD PRESSURE MEASUREMENT UNAVAILABLE	NA	NA	NA	**Clarification**: It is desirable to have blood pressure measurements taken before initiation of POC use. However, in some settings blood pressure measurements are unavailable. In many of these settings pregnancy morbidity and mortality risks are high, and POCs are one of the few methods widely available. In such settings, women should not be denied use of POCs simply because their blood pressure cannot be measured.

POCs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	POP	D/NE	LNG/ETG	
POP = progestogen-only pills **LNG/ETG** = levonorgestrel and etonogestrel implants **D/NE** = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) / norethisterone enantate (NET-EN)				
CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE				
MULTIPLE RISK FACTORS FOR ARTERIAL CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE (such as older age, smoking, diabetes and hypertension)	2	3	2	**Clarification**: When multiple major risk factors exist, the risk of cardiovascular disease may increase substantially. Some POCs may increase the risk of thrombosis, although this increase is substantially less than with COCs. The effects of DMPA and NET-EN may persist for some time after discontinuation.
HYPERTENSION* For all categories of hypertension, classifications are based on the assumption that no other risk factors for cardiovascular disease exist. When multiple risk factors do exist, the risk of cardiovascular disease may increase substantially. A single reading of blood pressure level is not sufficient to classify a woman as hypertensive.				
a) History of hypertension, where blood pressure CANNOT be evaluated (including hypertension in pregnancy)	2	2	2	**Clarification**: It is desirable to have blood pressure measurements taken before initiation of POC use. However, in some settings blood pressure measurements are unavailable. In many of these settings pregnancy morbidity and morality risks are high, and POCs are one of the few types of methods widely available. In such settings, women should not be denied the use of POCs simply because their blood pressure cannot be measured.
b) Adequately controlled hypertension, where blood pressure CAN be evaluated	1	2	1	**Clarification**: Women adequately treated for hypertension are at reduced risk of acute myocardial infarction and stroke as compared with untreated women. Although there are no data, POC users with adequately controlled and monitored hypertension should be at reduced risk of acute myocardial infarction and stroke compared with untreated hypertensive POC users.
c) Elevated blood pressure levels (properly taken measurements)				**Evidence**: Limited evidence suggests that among women with hypertension, those who used POPs or progestogen-only injectables had a small increased risk of cardiovascular events compared with women who did not use these methods.(109)
(i) systolic 140-159 or diastolic 90-99 mm Hg	1	2	1	
(ii) systolic ≥160 or diastolic ≥100 mm Hg	2	3	2	
d) Vascular disease	2	3	2	

POCs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation					CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	POP		D/NE	LNG/ETG		
POP = progestogen-only pills **LNG/ETG** = levonorgestrel and etonogestrel implants **D/NE** = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) / norethisterone enantate (NET-EN)						
HISTORY OF HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE DURING PREGNANCY (where current blood pressure is measurable and normal)	1		1	1		
DEEP VENOUS THROMBOSIS (DVT)/ PULMONARY EMBOLISM (PE)*						
a) History of DVT/PE	2		2	2		
b) Acute DVT/PE	3		3	3		**Evidence**: There is no direct evidence on the use of POCs among women with DVT/PE on anticoagulant therapy. Although evidence on the risk of venous thrombosis with the use of POCs is inconsistent in otherwise healthy women, any small increased risk is substantially less than that with COCs.(109-111)
c) DVT/PE and established on anticoagulant therapy	2		2	2		**Evidence**: There is no direct evidence on the use of POCs among women with DVT/PE on anticoagulant therapy. Although evidence on the risk of venous thrombosis with the use of POCs is inconsistent in otherwise healthy women, any small increased risk is substantially less than that with COCs.(109-111) Limited evidence indicates that intramuscular injections of DMPA in women on chronic anticoagulation therapy does not pose a significant risk of hematoma at the injection site or increase the risk of heavy or irregular vaginal bleeding.(112;113)
d) Family history (first-degree relatives)	1		1	1		
e) Major surgery						
(i) with prolonged immobilization	2		2	2		
(ii) without prolonged immobilization	1		1	1		
f) Minor surgery without immobilization	1		1	1		
KNOWN THROMBOGENIC MUTATIONS (e.g., factor V Leiden; prothrombin mutation; protein S, protein C, and antithrombin deficiencies)	2		2	2		**Clarification**: Routine screening is not appropriate because of the rarity of the conditions and the high cost of screening.
SUPERFICIAL VENOUS THROMBOSIS						
a) Varicose veins	1		1	1		
b) Superficial thrombophlebitis	1		1	1		
CURRENT AND HISTORY OF ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE*	I	C		I	C	
	2	3	3	2	3	
STROKE* (history of cerebrovascular accident)	I	C		I	C	
	2	3	3	2	3	

POCs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	POP	D/NE	LNG/ETG	
POP = progestogen-only pills **LNG/ETG** = levonorgestrel and etonogestrel implants **D/NE** = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) / norethisterone enantate (NET-EN)				
KNOWN HYPERLIPIDAEMIAS	2	2	2	**Clarification**: Routine screening is not appropriate because of the rarity of the conditions and the high cost of screening. Some types of hyperlipidaemias are risk factors for vascular disease.
VALVULAR HEART DISEASE				
a) Uncomplicated	1	1	1	
b) Complicated (pulmonary hypertension, risk of atrial fibrillation, history of subacute bacterial endocarditis)	1	1	1	
RHEUMATIC DISEASES				
SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS (SLE)*				
People with SLE are at increased risk of ischaemic heart disease, stroke and venous thromboembolism. Categories assigned to such conditions in the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use* should be the same for women with SLE who present with these conditions. For all categories of SLE, classifications are based on the assumption that no other risk factors for cardiovascular disease are present; these classifications must be modified in the presence of such risk factors. Available evidence indicates that many women with SLE can be considered good candidates for most contraceptive methods, including hormonal contraceptives.(114-132)				
		I C		
a) Positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies	3	3 3	3	**Evidence**: Antiphospholipid antibodies are associated with a higher risk for both arterial and venous thrombosis.(133-135)
b) Severe thrombocytopenia	2	3 2	2	
c) Immunosuppressive treatment	2	2 2	2	
d) None of the above	2	2 2	2	
NEUROLOGIC CONDITIONS				
HEADACHES*	I C	I C	I C	
a) Non-migrainous (mild or severe)	1 1	1 1	1 1	**Clarification**: Classification depends on accurate diagnosis of those severe headaches that are migrainous and those that are not. Any new headaches or marked changes in headaches should be evaluated. Classification is for women without any other risk factors for stroke. Risk of stroke increases with age, hypertension and smoking.
b) Migraine				
(i) without aura				
Age < 35 years	1 2	2 2	2 2	
Age ≥ 35 years	1 2	2 2	2 2	
(ii) with aura, at any age	2 3	2 3	2 3	
EPILEPSY	1	1	1	**Clarification**: If a woman is taking anticonvulsants, refer to the section on drug interactions. Certain anticonvulsants lower POC effectiveness.
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS				
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS	1	1	1	**Clarification**: The classification is based on data for women with selected depressive disorders. No data on bipolar disorder or postpartum depression were available. There is a potential for drug interactions between certain antidepressant medications and hormonal contraceptives. **Evidence**: POC use did not increase depressive symptoms in women with depression compared with baseline.(136-139)

POCs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	POP	D/NE	LNG/ETG	
POP = progestogen-only pills **LNG/ETG** = levonorgestrel and etonogestrel implants **D/NE** = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) / norethisterone enantate (NET-EN)				
REPRODUCTIVE TRACT INFECTIONS AND DISORDERS				
VAGINAL BLEEDING PATTERNS*				
a) Irregular pattern without heavy bleeding	2	2	2	
b) Heavy or prolonged bleeding (includes regular and irregular patterns)	2	2	2	**Clarification**: Unusually heavy bleeding should raise the suspicion of a serious underlying condition.
UNEXPLAINED VAGINAL BLEEDING* (suspicious for serious condition)				**Clarification**: If pregnancy or an underlying pathological condition (such as pelvic malignancy) is suspected, it must be evaluated and the category adjusted after evaluation.
Before evaluation	2	3	3	
ENDOMETRIOSIS	1	1	1	
BENIGN OVARIAN TUMOURS (including cysts)	1	1	1	
SEVERE DYSMENORRHOEA	1	1	1	
GESTATIONAL TROPHOBLASTIC DISEASE				
a) Decreasing or undetectable β-hCG levels	1	1	1	
b) Persistently elevated β-hCG levels or malignant disease	1	1	1	
CERVICAL ECTROPION	1	1	1	
CERVICAL INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA (CIN)	1	2	2	**Evidence**: Among women with persistent HPV infection, long-term DMPA use (≥ 5 years) may increase the risk of carcinoma in situ and invasive carcinoma.(140)
CERVICAL CANCER* (awaiting treatment)	1	2	2	
BREAST DISEASE*				
a) Undiagnosed mass	2	2	2	**Clarification**: Evaluation should be pursued as early as possible.
b) Benign breast disease	1	1	1	
c) Family history of cancer	1	1	1	
d) Breast cancer				
(i) current	4	4	4	
(ii) past and no evidence of current disease for 5 years	3	3	3	
ENDOMETRIAL CANCER*	1	1	1	
OVARIAN CANCER*	1	1	1	
UTERINE FIBROIDS*				
a) Without distortion of the uterine cavity	1	1	1	
b) With distortion of the uterine cavity	1	1	1	

POCs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	POP	D/NE	LNG/ETG	
POP = progestogen-only pills **LNG/ETG** = levonorgestrel and etonogestrel implants **D/NE** = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) / norethisterone enantate (NET-EN)				
PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)*				
a) Past PID (assuming no current risk factors for STIs)				
(i) with subsequent pregnancy	1	1	1	
(ii) without subsequent pregnancy	1	1	1	
b) PID - current	1	1	1	
STIs				
a) Current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonorrhoea	1	1	1	
b) Other STIs (excluding HIV and hepatitis)	1	1	1	
c) Vaginitis (including trichomonas vaginalis and bacterial vaginosis)	1	1	1	
d) Increased risk of STIs	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Evidence suggests that there may be an increased risk of chlamydial cervicitis among DMPA users at high risk of STIs. For other STIs, there is either evidence of no association between DMPA use and STI acquisition or too limited evidence to draw any conclusions. There is no evidence for other POCs.(141-148)
HIV/AIDS				
HIGH RISK OF HIV	1	1	1	**Evidence**: The balance of the evidence suggests no association between POC use and HIV acquisition, although studies of DMPA use conducted among higher-risk populations have reported inconsistent findings.(149-173)
HIV-INFECTED	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Most studies suggest no increased risk of HIV disease progression with hormonal contraceptive use, as measured by changes in CD4 cell count, viral load or survival. Studies observing that women with HIV who use hormonal contraception have increased risks of acquiring STIs are generally consistent with reports among uninfected women. One direct study found no association between hormonal contraceptive use and an increased risk of HIV transmission to uninfected partners; several indirect studies reported mixed results regarding whether hormonal contraception is associated with an increased risk of HIV-1 DNA or RNA shedding from the genital tract.(174-191)
AIDS	1	1	1	**Clarification**: Because there may be drug interactions between hormonal contraceptives and ARV therapy, refer to the section on drug interactions.

POCs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	POP	D/NE	LNG/ETG	
POP = progestogen-only pills **LNG/ETG** = levonorgestrel and etonogestrel implants **D/NE** = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) / norethisterone enantate (NET-EN)				
OTHER INFECTIONS				
SCHISTOSOMIASIS				
a) Uncomplicated	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Among women with uncomplicated schistosomiasis, limited evidence showed that DMPA use had no adverse effects on liver function.(192)
b) Fibrosis of the liver (if severe, see cirrhosis)	1	1	1	
TUBERCULOSIS				**Clarification**: If a woman is taking rifampicin, refer to the section on drug interactions. Rifampicin is likely to decrease the effectiveness of some POCs.
a) Non-pelvic	1	1	1	
a) Pelvic	1	1	1	
MALARIA	1	1	1	
ENDOCRINE CONDITIONS				
DIABETES*				
a) History of gestational disease	1	1	1	**Evidence**: POCs had no adverse effects on serum lipid levels in women with a history of gestational diabetes in two small studies.(193;194) Limited evidence is inconsistent regarding the development of non-insulin-dependent diabetes among users of POCs with a history of gestational diabetes.(195-198)
b) Non-vascular disease				**Evidence**: Among women with insulin or non-insulin dependent diabetes, limited evidence on the use of progestogen-only methods (POPs, DMPA, LNG implant) suggests that these methods have little effect on short-term or long-term diabetes control (e.g., HbA_{1c} levels), haemostatic markers or lipid profile.(199-202)
(i) non-insulin dependent	2	2	2	
(ii) insulin dependent	2	2	2	
c) Nephropathy/retinopathy/ neuropathy	2	3	2	
d) Other vascular disease or diabetes of > 20 years' duration	2	3	2	
THYROID DISORDERS				
a) Simple goitre	1	1	1	
b) Hyperthyroid	1	1	1	
c) Hypothyroid	1	1	1	
GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS				
GALL BLADDER DISEASE				
a) Symptomatic				
(i) treated by cholecystectomy	2	2	2	
(ii) medically treated	2	2	2	
(iii) current	2	2	2	
b) Asymptomatic	2	2	2	

POCs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	POP	D/NE	LNG/ETG	
POP = progestogen-only pills **LNG/ETG** = levonorgestrel and etonogestrel implants **D/NE** = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) / norethisterone enantate (NET-EN)				
HISTORY OF CHOLESTASIS*				
a) Pregnancy-related	1	1	1	
b) Past-COC related	2	2	2	
VIRAL HEPATITIS				
a) Acute or flare	1	1	1	
b) Carrier	1	1	1	
c) Chronic	1	1	1	
CIRRHOSIS				
a) Mild (compensated)	1	1	1	
b) Severe (decompensated)	3	3	3	
LIVER TUMOURS*				
a) Benign				
(i) Focal nodular hyperplasia	2	2	2	**Evidence**: There is limited, direct evidence that hormonal contraceptive use does not influence either progression or regression of liver lesions among women with focal nodular hyperplasia. (203-205)
(ii) Hepatocellular adenoma	3	3	3	
b) Malignant (hepatoma)	3	3	3	
ANAEMIAS				
THALASSAEMIA	1	1	1	
SICKLE CELL DISEASE	1	1	1	**Evidence**: Among women with sickle cell disease, POC use did not have adverse effects on haematological parameters and, in some studies, was beneficial with respect to clinical symptoms. (206-213)
IRON-DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA*	1	1	1	
DRUG INTERACTIONS				
ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY				**Clarification**: Antiretroviral drugs have the potential to either decrease or increase the bioavailability of steroid hormones in hormonal contraceptives. Limited data (summarized in Annex 1) suggest potential drug interactions between many antiretroviral drugs (particularly some NNRTIs and ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors) and hormonal contraceptives. These interactions may alter the safety and effectiveness of both the hormonal contraceptive and the antiretroviral drug. Thus, if a woman on antiretroviral treatment decides to initiate or continue hormonal contraceptive use, the consistent use of condoms is recommended. This is both for preventing HIV transmission and to compensate for any possible reduction in the effectiveness of the hormonal contraceptive.
a) Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs)	1	DMPA=1 NET-EN=1	1	
b) Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs)	2	DMPA=1 NET-EN=2	2	
c) Ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors	3	DMPA=1 NET-EN=2	2	

POCs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	POP	D/NE	LNG/ETG	
POP = progestogen-only pills **LNG/ETG** = levonorgestrel and etonogestrel implants **D/NE** = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) / norethisterone enantate (NET-EN)				
ANTICONVULSANT THERAPY				
a) Certain anticonvulsants (phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine)	3	DMPA=1 NET-EN=2	2	**Clarification**: Although the interaction of certain anticonvulsants with POPs, NET-EN and LNG/ETG implants is not harmful to women, it is likely to reduce the effectiveness of POPs, NET-EN and LNG/ETG implants. Whether increasing the hormone dose of POPs alleviates this concern remains unclear. Use of other contraceptives should be encouraged for women who are long-term users of any of these drugs. Use of DMPA is Category 1 because its effectiveness is not decreased by the use of certain anticonvulsants. **Evidence**: Use of certain anticonvulsants may decrease the effectiveness of POCs.(214-216)
b) Lamotrigine	1	1	1	**Evidence**: No drug interactions have been reported among women with epilepsy taking lamotrigine and using POCs.(217)
ANTIMICROBIAL THERAPY				
a) Broad-spectrum antibiotics	1	1	1	
b) Antifungals	1	1	1	
c) Antiparasitics	1	1	1	
d) Rifampicin or rifabutin therapy	3	DMPA=1 NET-EN=2	2	**Clarification**: Although the interaction of rifampicin or rifabutin with POPs, NET-EN and LNG/ETG implants is not harmful to women, it is likely to reduce the effectiveness of POPs, NET-EN and LNG/ETG implants. Use of other contraceptives should be encouraged for women who are long-term users of any of these drugs. Use of DMPA is Category 1 because its effectiveness is not decreased by the use of rifampicin or rifabutin. Whether increasing the hormone dose of POPs alleviates this concern remains unclear.

ADDITIONAL COMMENTS

PAST ECTOPIC PREGNANCY
POPs have a higher absolute rate of ectopic pregnancy compared with other POCs, but still less than using no method. The 75 µg desogestrel-containing pill inhibits ovulation in most cycles, which suggests a low risk of ectopic pregnancy.

HYPERTENSION
Vascular disease: there is concern regarding hypo-estrogenic effects and reduced high-density lipoprotein (HDL) levels, particularly among users of DMPA and NET-EN. However, there is little concern about these effects with regard to POPs or LNG/ETG implants. The effects of DMPA and NET-EN may persist for some time after discontinuation.

DEEP VEIN THROMBOSIS/PULMONARY EMBOLISM
Women on anticoagulation therapy who have a history of hemorrhagic ovarian cysts may benefit from DMPA use.

CURRENT AND HISTORY OF ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE
There is concern regarding hypo-estrogenic effects and reduced HDL levels, particularly among users of DMPA and NET-EN. However, there is little concern about these effects with regard to POPs or LNG/ETG implants. The effects of DMPA and NET-EN may persist for some time after discontinuation.

STROKE
There is concern regarding hypo-estrogenic effects and reduced HDL levels, particularly among users of DMPA and NET-EN. However, there is little concern about these effects with regard to POPs or LNG/ETG implants. The effects of DMPA and NET-EN may persist for some time after discontinuation.

SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS (SLE)
Severe thrombocytopenia increases the risk of bleeding. POCs may be useful in the treatment of menorrhagia in women with severe thrombocytopenia. However, given the increased or erratic bleeding that may be seen on initiation of DMPA and its irreversibility for 11-13 weeks after administration, initiation of this method in women with severe thrombocytopenia should be done with caution.

HEADACHES
Aura is a specific focal neurologic symptom. For more information on this and other diagnostic criteria, see: Headache Classification Subcommittee of the International Headache Society. The International Classification of Headache Disorders, 2nd edition. *Cephalalgia*. 2004;24(Suppl 1):1-150. http://ihs-classification.org/en/02_klassifikation (accessed 21 Aug 2009).

There is concern that severe headaches may increase with use of NET-EN, DMPA, and implants. The effects of NET-EN and DMPA may persist for some time after discontinuation.

VAGINAL BLEEDING PATTERNS
Irregular menstrual bleeding patterns are common among healthy women. POC use frequently induces an irregular bleeding pattern. Implant use may induce irregular bleeding patterns, especially during the first 3-6 months, but these patterns may persist longer. ETG users are more likely than LNG users to develop amenorrhoea.

UNEXPLAINED VAGINAL BLEEDING
POCs may cause irregular bleeding patterns which may mask symptoms of underlying pathology. The effects of DMPA and NET-EN may persist for some time after discontinuation.

CERVICAL CANCER (AWAITING TREATMENT)
There is some theoretical concern that POC use may affect prognosis of the existing disease. While awaiting treatment, women may use POCs. In general, treatment of this condition renders a woman sterile.

BREAST DISEASE
Breast cancer: breast cancer is a hormonally sensitive tumour, and the prognosis of women with current or recent breast cancer may worsen with POC use.

ENDOMETRIAL CANCER
While awaiting treatment, women may use POCs. In general, treatment of this condition renders a woman sterile.

OVARIAN CANCER
While awaiting treatment, women may use POCs. In general, treatment of this condition renders a woman sterile.

UTERINE FIBROIDS
POCs do not appear to cause growth of uterine fibroids.

PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)
Whether POCs, like COCs, reduce the risk of PID among women with STIs is unknown, but they do not protect against HIV or lower genital tract STIs.

DIABETES
Nephropathy/retinopathy/neuropathy: there is concern regarding hypo-estrogenic effects and reduced HDL levels, particularly among users of DMPA and NET-EN. The effects of DMPA and NET-EN may persist for some time after discontinuation. Some POCs may increase the risk of thrombosis, although this increase is substantially less than with COCs.

Other vascular disease or diabetes of >20 years' duration: there is concern regarding hypo-estrogenic effects and reduced HDL levels, particularly among users of DMPA and NET-EN. The effects of DMPA and NET-EN may persist for some time after discontinuation. Some POCs may increase the risk of thrombosis, although this increase is substantially less than with COCs.

HISTORY OF CHOLESTASIS

Theoretically, a history of COC-related cholestasis may predict subsequent cholestasis with POC use. However, this has not been documented.

LIVER TUMOURS

There is no evidence regarding hormonal contraceptive use among women with hepatocellular adenoma. Given that COC use in healthy women is associated with development and growth of hepatocellular adenoma, it is not known whether other hormonal contraceptives have similar effects.

IRON-DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA

Changes in the menstrual pattern associated with POC use have little effect on haemoglobin levels.

REFERENCE LIST

(1) Albertazzi P, Bottazzi M, Steel SA. Bone mineral density and depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. *Contraception*, 2006, 73:577-583.

(2) Banks E, Berrington A, Casabonne D. Overview of the relationship between use of progestogen-only contraceptives and bone mineral density. *British Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 2001, 108:1214-1221.

(3) Beksinska ME, Smit JA, Kleinschmidt I, Farley TMM, Mbatha F. Bone mineral density in women aged 40-49 years using depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate, norethisterone enanthate or combined oral contraceptives for contraception. *Contraception,* 71, 170-175. 2005.

(4) Beksinska ME, Kleinschmidt I, Smit JA et al. Bone mineral density in adolescents using norethisterone enanthate, depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate or combined oral contraceptives for contraception. *Contraception*, 2007, 75:438-443.

(5) Berenson AB, Breitkopf CR, Grady JJ et al. Effects of hormonal contraception on bone mineral density after 24 months of use. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2004, 103:899-906.

(6) Busen NH, Britt RB, Rianon N. Bone mineral density in a cohort of adolescent women using depot medroxyprogesterone acetate for one to two years. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 2003, 32:257-259.

(7) Clark MK, Sowers M, Levy B et al. Bone mineral density loss and recovery during 48 months in first-time users of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2006, 86:1466-1474.

(8) Cromer BA, Blair JM, Mahan JD et al. A prospective comparison of bone density in adolescent girls receiving depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (Depo-Provera), levonorgestrel (Norplant), or oral contraceptives. *Journal of Pediatrics*, 1996, 129:671-676.

(9) Cromer BA, Stager M, Bonny A et al. Depot medroxyprogesterone acetate, oral contraceptives and bone mineral density in a cohort of adolescent girls. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 2004, 35:434-441.

(10) Cromer BA, Lazebnik R, Rome E et al. Double-blinded randomized controlled trial of estrogen supplementation in adolescent girls who receive depot medroxyprogesterone acetate for contraception. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2005, 192:42-47.

(11) Cromer BA, Bonny AE, Stager M et al. Bone mineral density in adolescent females using injectable or oral contraceptives: a 24-month prospective study. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2008, 90:2060-2067.

(12) Cundy T, Cornish J, Evans MC et al. Recovery of bone density in women who stop using medroxyprogesterone acetate. *British Medical Journal*, 1994, 308:247-248.

(13) Cundy T, Cornish J, Roberts H et al. Spinal bone density in women using depot medroxyprogesterone contraception. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1998, 92:569-573.

(14) Cundy T, Cornish J, Roberts H et al. Menopausal bone loss in long-term users of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate contraception. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2002, 186:978-983.

(15) Cundy T, Ames R, Horne A et al. A randomized controlled trial of estrogen replacement therapy in long-term users of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism*, 2003, 88:78-81.

(16) Gbolade B, Ellis S, Murby B et al. Bone density in long term users of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. *British Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 1998, 105:790-794.

(17) Kaunitz AM, Miller PD, Rice VM et al. Bone mineral density in women aged 25-35 years receiving depot medroxyprogesterone acetate: recovery following discontinuation. *Contraception*, 2006, 74:90-99.

(18) Kaunitz AM, Arias R, McClung M. Bone density recovery after depot medroxyprogesterone acetate injectable contraception use. *Contraception*, 2008, 77:67-76.

(19) Lappe JM, Stegman MR, Recker RR. The impact of lifestyle factors on stress fractures in female Army recruits. *Osteoporosis International*, 2001, 12:35-42.

(20) Lara-Torre E, Edwards CP, Perlman S et al. Bone mineral density in adolescent females using depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. *Journal of Pediatrics & Adolescent Gynecology*, 2004, 17:17-21.

(21) Lopez LM, Grimes DA, Schulz KF et al. Steroidal contraceptives: effect on bone fractures in women. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 2006,CD006033.

(22) McGough P, Bigrigg A. Effect of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate on bone density in a Scottish industrial city. *European Journal of Contraception & Reproductive Health Care*, 2007, 12:253-259.

(23) Merki-Feld GS, Neff M, Keller PJ. A 2-year prospective study on the effects of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate on bone mass-response to estrogen and calcium therapy in individual users. *Contraception*, 2003, 67:79-86.

(24) Orr-Walker BJ, Evans MC, Ames RW et al. The effect of past use of the injectable contraceptive depot medroxyprogesterone acetate on bone mineral density in normal post-menopausal women. *Clinical Endocrinology*, 1998, 49:615-618.

(25) Ott SM, Scholes D, LaCroix AZ et al. Effects of contraceptive use on bone biochemical markers in young women. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism*, 2001, 86:179-185.

(26) Paiva LC, Pinto-Neto AM, Faundes A. Bone density among long-term users of medroxyprogesterone acetate as a contraceptive. *Contraception*, 1998, 58:351-355.

(27) Perrotti M, Bahamondes L, Petta C et al. Forearm bone density in long-term users of oral combined contraceptives and depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2001, 76:469-473.

(28) Petitti DB, Piaggio G, Mehta S et al. Steroid hormone contraception and bone mineral density: a cross-sectional study in an international population. The WHO Study of Hormonal Contraception and Bone Health. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2000, 95:736-744.

(29) Rosenberg L, Zhang Y, Constant D et al. Bone status after cessation of use of injectable progestin contraceptives. *Contraception*, 2007, 76:425-431.

(30) Scholes D, LaCroix AZ, Ott SM et al. Bone mineral density in women using depot medroxyprogesterone acetate for contraception. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1999, 93:233-238.

(31) Scholes D, LaCroix AZ, Ichikawa LE et al. Injectable hormone contraception and bone density: results from a prospective study. *Epidemiology*, 2002, 13:581-587.

(32) Scholes D, LaCroix AZ, Ichikawa LE et al. The association between depot medroxyprogesterone acetate contraception and bone mineral density in adolescent women. *Contraception*, 2004, 69:99-104.

(33) Scholes D, LaCroix AZ, Ichikawa LE et al. Change in bone mineral density among adolescent women using and discontinuing depot medroxyprogesterone acetate contraception. *Archives of Pediatrics & Adolescent Medicine*, 2005, 159:139-144.

(34) Shaarawy M, El-Mallah SY, Seoudi S et al. Effects of the long-term use of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate as hormonal contraceptive on bone mineral density and biochemical markers of bone remodeling. *Contraception*, 2006, 74:297-302.

(35) Tang OS, Tang G, Yip P et al. Long-term depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate and bone mineral density. *Contraception*, 1999, 59:25-29.

(36) Tang OS, Tang G, Yip PS et al. Further evaluation on long-term depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate use and bone mineral density: a longitudinal cohort study. *Contraception*, 2000, 62:161-164.

(37) Tharnprisarn W, Taneepanichskul S. Bone mineral density in adolescent and young Thai girls receiving oral contraceptives compared with depot medroxyprogesterone acetate: a cross-sectional study in young Thai women. *Contraception*, 2002, 66:101-103.

(38) Virutamasen P, Wangsuphachart S, Reinprayoon D et al. Trabecular bone in long-term depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate users. *Asia-Oceania Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 1994, 20:269-274.

(39) Walsh JS, Eastell R, Peel NF. Effects of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate on bone density and bone metabolism before and after peak bone mass: A case-control study. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism*, 2008, 93:1317-1323.

(40) Wanichsetakul P, Kamudhamas A, Watanaruangkovit P et al. Bone mineral density at various anatomic bone sites in women receiving combined oral contraceptives and depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate for contraception. *Contraception*, 2002, 65:407-410.

(41) Wetmore CM, Ichikawa L, LaCroix AZ et al. Association between caffeine intake and bone mass among young women: potential effect modification by depot medroxyprogesterone acetate use. *Osteoporosis International*, 2008, 19:519-527.

(42) Bahamondes L, Perrotti M, Castro S et al. Forearm bone density in users of Depo-Provera as a contraceptive method. *Fertility & Sterility*, 1999, 71:849-852.

(43) Bahamondes L, Monteiro-Dantas C, Espejo-Arce X et al. A prospective study of the forearm bone density of users of etonorgestrel- and levonorgestrel-releasing contraceptive implants. *Human Reproduction*, 2006, 21:466-470.

(44) Bahamondes L, Espejo-Arce X, Hidalgo MM et al. A cross-sectional study of the forearm bone density of long-term users of levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system. *Human Reproduction*, 2006, 21:1316-1319.

(45) Beerthuizen R, van Beek A, Massai R et al. Bone mineral density during long-term use of the progestagen contraceptive implant Implanon compared to a non-hormonal method of contraception. *Human Reproduction*, 2000, 15:118-122.

(46) Caird LE, Reid-Thomas V, Hannan WJ et al. Oral progestogen-only contraception may protect against loss of bone mass in breast-feeding women. *Clinical Endocrinology (Oxford)*, 1994, 41:739-745.

(47) Di X, Li Y, Zhang C et al. Effects of levonorgestrel-releasing subdermal contraceptive implants on bone density and bone metabolism. *Contraception*, 1999, 60:161-166.

(48) Diaz S, Reyes MV, Zepeda A et al. Norplant((R)) implants and progesterone vaginal rings do not affect maternal bone turnover and density during lactation and after weaning. *Human Reproduction*, 1999, 14:2499-2505.

(49) Intaraprasert S, Taneepanichskul S, Theppisai U et al. Bone density in women receiving Norplant implants for contraception. *Journal of the Medical Association of Thailand*, 1997, 80:738-741.

(50) Monteiro-Dantas C, Espejo-Arce X, Lui-Filho JF et al. A three-year longitudinal evaluation of the forearm bone density of users of etonogestrel- and levonorgestrel-releasing contraceptive implants. *Reproductive Health*, 2007, 4:11.

(51) Naessen T, Olsson SE, Gudmundson J. Differential effects on bone density of progestogen-only methods for contraception in premenopausal women. *Contraception*, 1995, 52:35-39.

(52) Taneepanichskul S, Intaraprasert S, Theppisai U et al. Bone mineral density during long-term treatment with Norplant implants and depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. A cross-sectional study of Thai women. *Contraception*, 1997, 56:153-155.

(53) Taneepanichskul S, Intaraprasert S, Theppisai U et al. Bone mineral density in long-term depot medroxyprogesterone acetate acceptors. *Contraception*, 1997, 56:1-3.

(54) Vanderjagt DJ, Sagay AS, Imade GE et al. Effect of Norplant contraceptive on the bones of Nigerian women as assessed by quantitative ultrasound and serum markers of bone turnover. *Contraception*, 2005, 72:212-216.

(55) Abdulla KA, Elwan SI, Salem HS et al. Effect of early postpartum use of the contraceptive implants, NORPLANT, on the serum levels of immunoglobulins of the mothers and their breastfed infants. *Contraception*, 1985, 32:261-266.

(56) bdel-Aleem H, bol-Oyoun e, Shaaban MM et al. The use of nomegestrol acetate subdermal contraceptive implant, uniplant, during lactation. *Contraception*, 1996, 54:281-286.

(57) Bjarnadottir RI, Gottfredsdottir H, Sigurdardottir K et al. Comparative study of the effects of a progestogen-only pill containing desogestrel and an intrauterine contraceptive device in lactating women. *British Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 2001, 108:1174-1180.

(58) Croxatto HB, Diaz S, Peralta O et al. Fertility regulation in nursing women. II. Comparative performance of progesterone implants versus placebo and copper T. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1982, 144:201-208.

(59) Diaz S, Peralta O, Juez G et al. Fertility regulation in nursing women. VI. Contraceptive effectiveness of a subdermal progesterone implant. *Contraception*, 1984, 30:311-325.

(60) Diaz S, Herreros C, Juez G et al. Fertility regulation in nursing women: VII. Influence of NORPLANT levonorgestrel implants upon lactation and infant growth. *Contraception*, 1985, 32:53-74.

(61) Diaz S, Zepeda A, Maturana X et al. Fertility regulation in nursing women : IX. Contraceptive performance, duration of lactation, infant growth, and bleeding patterns during use of progesterone vaginal rings, progestin-only pills, Norplant(R) implants, and Copper T 380-A intrauterine devices. *Contraception*, 1997, 56:223-232.

(62) Giner VJ, Cortes G, V, Sotelo LA et al. [Effect of daily oral administration of 0.350 mg of norethindrone on lactation and on the composition of milk]. *Ginecología Obstétrica de México*, 1976, 40:31-39.

(63) Guiloff E, Ibarrapo A, Zanartu J et al. Effect of contraception on lactation. *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 1974, 118:42-45.

(64) Halderman LD, Nelson AL. Impact of early postpartum administration of progestin-only hormonal contraceptives compared with nonhormonal contraceptives on short-term breast-feeding patterns. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2002, 186:1250-1256.

(65) Hannon PR, Duggan AK, Serwint JR et al. The influence of medroxyprogesterone on the duration of breast-feeding in mothers in an urban community. *Archives of Pediatrics & Adolescent Medicine*, 1997, 151:490-496.

(66) Heikkila M, Luukkainen T. Duration of breast-feeding and development of children after insertion of a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine contraceptive device. *Contraception*, 1982, 25:279-292.

(67) Jimenez J, Ochoa M, Soler MP et al. Long-term follow-up of children breast-fed by mothers receiving depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate. *Contraception*, 1984, 30:523-533.

(68) Kamal I, Hefnawi F, Ghoneim M et al. Clinical, biochemical, and experimental studies on lactation. V. Clinical effects of steroids on the initiation of lactation. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1970, 108:655-658.

(69) Karim M, Ammar R, El-mahgoub S et al. Injected progestogen and lactation. *British Medical Journal*, 1971, 1:200-203.

(70) Massai MR, Diaz S, Quinteros E et al. Contraceptive efficacy and clinical performance of Nestorone implants in postpartum women. *Contraception*, 2001, 64:369-376.

(71) Massai R, Miranda P, Valdes P et al. Preregistration study on the safety and contraceptive efficacy of a progesterone-releasing vaginal ring in Chilean nursing women. *Contraception*, 1999, 60:9-14.

(72) Massai R, Quinteros E, Reyes MV et al. Extended use of a progesterone-releasing vaginal ring in nursing women: a phase II clinical trial. *Contraception*, 2005, 72:352-357.

(73) McCann MF, Moggia AV, Higgins JE et al. The effects of a progestin-only oral contraceptive (levonorgestrel 0.03 mg) on breast-feeding. *Contraception*, 1989, 40:635-648.

(74) McEwan JA, Joyce DN, Tothill AU et al. Early experience in contraception with a new progestogen. *Contraception*, 1977, 16:339-350.

(75) Melis GB, Strigini F, Fruzzetti F et al. Norethisterone enanthate as an injectable contraceptive in puerperal and non-puerperal women. *Contraception*, 1981, 23:77-88.

(76) Narducci U, Piatti N. [Use of Depo Provera as a contraceptive in the puerperium]. *Minerva Ginecologica*, 1973, 25:107-111.

(77) Reinprayoon D, Taneepanichskul S, Bunyavejchevin S et al. Effects of the etonogestrel-releasing contraceptive implant (Implanon(R)) on parameters of breastfeeding compared to those of an intrauterine device. *Contraception*, 2000, 62:239-246.

(78) Schiappacasse V, Diaz S, Zepeda A et al. Health and growth of infants breastfed by Norplant contraceptive implants users: a six-year follow-up study. *Contraception*, 2002, 66:57-65.

(79) Seth U, Yadava HS, Agarwal N et al. Effect of a subdermal silastic implant containing norethindrone acetate on human lactation. *Contraception*, 1977, 16:383-398.

(80) Shaaban MM, Salem HT, Abdullah KA. Influence of levonorgestrel contraceptive implants, NORPLANT, initiated early postpartum upon lactation and infant growth. *Contraception*, 1985, 32:623-635.

(81) Shaaban MM. Contraception with progestogens and progesterone during lactation. *Journal of Steroid Biochemistry & Molecular Biology*, 1991, 40:705-710.

(82) Shaamash AH, Sayed GH, Hussien MM et al. A comparative study of the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system Mirena(R) versus the Copper T380A intrauterine device during lactation: breast-feeding performance, infant growth and infant development. *Contraception*, 2005, 72:346-351.

(83) Shikary ZK, Betrabet SS, Toddywala WS et al. Pharmacodynamic effects of levonorgestrel (LNG) administered either orally or subdermally to early postpartum lactating mothers on the urinary levels of follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), luteinizing hormone (LH) and testosterone (T) in their breastfed male infants. *Contraception*, 1986, 34:403-412.

(84) Sivin I, Diaz S, Croxatto HB et al. Contraceptives for lactating women: a comparative trial of a progesterone-releasing vaginal ring and the copper T 380A IUD. *Contraception*, 1997, 55:225-232.

(85) Taneepanichskul S, Reinprayoon D, Thaithumyanon P et al. Effects of the etonogestrel-releasing implant Implanon and a nonmedicated intrauterine device on the growth of breastfed infants. *Contraception*, 2006, 73:368-371.

(86) West CP. The acceptability of a progestagen-only contraceptive during breast-feeding. *Contraception*, 1983, 27:563-569.

(87) WHO Special Programme of Research Development and Research Training in Human Reproduction. Effects of Hormonal Contraceptives on Milk Volume and Infant Growth. *Contraception*, 1984, 30:505-522.

(88) WHO Special Programme of Research Development and Research Training in Human Reproduction. Progestogen-only contraceptives during lactation: II. Infant development. World Health Organization, Task Force for Epidemiological Research on Reproductive Health; Special Programme of Research, Development, and Research Training in Human Reproduction. *Contraception*, 1994, 50:55-68.

(89) Zacharias S, Aguilera E, Assenzo JR et al. Effects of hormonal and nonhormonal contraceptives on lactation and incidence of pregnancy. *Contraception*, 1986, 33:203-213.

(90) Zanartu J, Aguilera E, Munoz-Pinto G. Maintenance of lactation by means of continuous low-dose progestogen given post-partum as a contraceptive. *Contraception*, 1976, 13:313-318.

(91) Hull EM, Franz JR, Snyder AM et al. Perinatal progesterone and learning, social and reproductive behavior in rats. *Physiology & Behavior*, 1980, 24:251-256.

(92) Hull EM. Effects of neonatal exposure to progesterone in sexual behavior of male and female rats. *Physiology & Behavior*, 1981, 26:401-405.

(93) Lon stein JS, Quadroons PS, Wagner CK. Effects of neonatal RU486 on adult sexual, parental, and fearful behaviors in rats. *Behavioral Neuroscience*, 2001, 115:58-70.

(94) Snyder AM, Hull EM. Perinatal progesterone affects learning in rats. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 1980, 5:113-119.

(95) van der SP, Baumgarten R. Effects of treatment of male and female rats in infancy with mifepristone on reproductive function in adulthood. *Journal of Reproduction & Fertility*, 1990, 90:255-266.

(96) Kurunmaki H. Contraception with levonorgestrel-releasing subdermal capsules, Norplant, after pregnancy termination. *Contraception*, 1983, 27:473-482.

(97) Kurunmaki H, et al. Immediate postabortal contraception with Norplant: levonorgestrel, gonadotropin, estradiol, and progesterone levels over two postaboral months and return of fertility after removal of Norplant capsules. *Contraception*, 1984, 30:431-442.

(98) Lahteenmake P, Toivonen J, Lahteenmaki PL. Postabortal contraception with norethisterone enanthate injections. *Contraception*, 1983, 27:553-562.

(99) Ortayli N, et al. Immediate postabortal contraception with the levonorgestrel intrauterine device, Norplant, and traditional methods. *Contraception*, 2001, 63:309-314.

(100) Bonny AE, Ziegler J, Harvey R et al. Weight gain in obese and nonobese adolescent girls initiating depot medroxyprogesterone, oral contraceptive pills, or no hormonal contraceptive method. *Archives of Pediatrics & Adolescent Medicine*, 2006, 160:40-45.

(101) Clark MK, Dillon JS, Sowers M et al. Weight, fat mass, and central distribution of fat increase when women use depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate for contraception. *International Journal of Obesity*, 2005, 29:1252-1258.

(102) Jain J, Jakimiuk AJ, Bode FR et al. Contraceptive efficacy and safety of DMPA-SC. *Contraception*, 2004, 70:269-275.

(103) Kozlowski KJ, Rickert VI, Hendon A et al. Adolescents and Norplant: preliminary findings of side effects. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 1995, 16:373-378.

(104) Leiman G. Depo-medroxyprogesterone acetate as a contraceptive agent: its effect on weight and blood pressure. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1972, 114:97-102.

(105) Mangan SA, Larsen PG, Hudson S. Overweight teens at increased risk for weight gain while using depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. *Journal of Pediatric & Adolescent Gynecology*, 2002, 15:79-82.

(106) Risser WL, Gefter LR, Barratt MS et al. Weight change in adolescents who used hormonal contraception. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 1999, 24:433-436.

(107) Westhoff C, Jain JK, Milsom I et al. Changes in weight with depot medroxyprogesterone acetate subcutaneous injection 104 mg/0.65 mL. *Contraception*, 2007, 75:261-267.

(108) Curtis KM, Ravi A, Gaffield ME. Progestogen-only contraceptive use in obese women. *Contraception,* 2009; 80:346-354.

(109) World Health Organization. Cardiovascular disease and use of oral and injectable progestogen-only contraceptives and combined injectable contraceptives. Results of an international, multicenter, case-control study. *Contraception*, 1998, 57:315-324.

(110) Heinemann LA, Assmann A, DoMinh T et al. Oral progestogen-only contraceptives and cardiovascular risk: results from the Transnational Study on Oral Contraceptives and the health of Young Women. *European Journal of Contraception and Reproductive Health Care*, 1999, 4:67-73.

(111) Vasilakis C, Jick H, Mar Melero-Montes M. Risk of idiopathic venous thromboembolism in users of progestogens alone. *Lancet*, 1999, 354:1610-1611.

(112) Sonmezer M, Atabekoglu C, Cengiz B et al. Depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate in anticoagulated patients with previous hemorrhagic corpus luteum. *European Journal of Contraception and Reproductive Health Care*, 2005, 10:9-14.

(113) Culwell KR, Curtis KM. Use of contraceptive methods by women with current venous thrombosis on anticoagulant therapy: a systematic review. *Contraception,* 2009; 80:337-345.

(114) Bernatsky S, Ramsey-Goldman R, Gordon C et al. Factors associated with abnormal Pap results in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*, 2004, 43:1386-1389.

(115) Bernatsky S, Clarke A, Ramsey-Goldman R et al. Hormonal exposures and breast cancer in a sample of women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*, 2004, 43:1178-1181.

(116) Chopra N, Koren S, Greer WL et al. Factor V Leiden, prothrombin gene mutation, and thrombosis risk in patients with antiphospholipid antibodies. *Journal of Rheumatology*, 2002, 29:1683-1688.

(117) Esdaile JM, Abrahamowicz M, Grodzicky T et al. Traditional Framingham risk factors fail to fully account for accelerated atherosclerosis in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 2001, 44:2331-2337.

(118) Julkunen HA. Oral contraceptives in systemic lupus erythematosus: side-effects and influence on the activity of SLE. *Scandinavian Journal of Rheumatology*, 1991, 20:427-433.

(119) Julkunen HA, Kaaja R, Friman C. Contraceptive practice in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *British Journal of Rheumatology*, 1993, 32:227-230.

(120) Jungers P, Dougados M, Pelissier C et al. Influence of oral contraceptive therapy on the activity of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 1982, 25:618-623.

(121) Manzi S, Meilahn EN, Rairie JE et al. Age-specific incidence rates of myocardial infarction and angina in women with systemic lupus erythematosus: comparison with the Framingham Study. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 1997, 145:408-415.

(122) McAlindon T, Giannotta L, Taub N et al. Environmental factors predicting nephristis in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Annals of Rheumatic Diseases*, 1993, 52:720-724.

(123) McDonald J, Stewart J, Urowitz MB et al. Peripheral vascular disease in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Annals of Rheumatic Diseases*, 1992, 51:56-60.

(124) Mintz G, Gutierrez G, Deleze M et al. Contraception with progestogens in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Contraception*, 1984, 30:29-38.

(125) Petri M. Musculoskeletal complications of systemic lupus erythematosus in the Hopkins Lupus Cohort: an update. *Arthritis Care and Research*, 1995, 8:137-145.

(126) Petri M, Kim MY, Kalunian KC et al. Combined oral contraceptives in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 2005, 353:2550-2558.

(127) Petri M. Lupus in Baltimore: evidence-based 'clinical pearls' from the Hopkins Lupus Cohort. *Lupus*, 2005, 14:970-973.

(128) Sanchez-Guerrero J, Uribe AG, Jimenez-Santana L et al. A trial of contraceptive methods in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 2005, 353:2539-2549.

(129) Sarabi ZS, Chang E, Bobba R et al. Incidence rates of arterial and venous thrombosis after diagnosis of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 2005, 53:609-612.

(130) Schaedel ZE, Dolan G, Powell MC. The use of the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system in the management of menorrhagia in women with hemostatic disorders. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2005, 193:1361-1363.

(131) Somers E, Magder LS, Petri M. Antiphospholipid antibodies and incidence of venous thrombosis in a cohort of patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Journal of Rheumatology*, 2002, 29:2531-2536.

(132) Urowitz MB, Bookman AA, Koehler BE et al. The bimodal mortality pattern of systemic lupus erythematosus. *American Journal of Medicine*, 1976, 60:221-225.

(133) Choojitarom K, Verasertniyom O, Totemchokchyakarn K et al. Lupus nephritis and Raynaud's phenomenon are significant risk factors for vascular thrombosis in SLE patients with positive antiphospholipid antibodies. *Clinical Rheumatology*, 2008, 27:345-351.

(134) Wahl DG, Guillemin F, de Maistre E et al. Risk for venous thrombosis related to antiphospholipid antibodies in systemic lupus erythematosus -- a meta-analysis. *Lupus*, 1997, 6:467-473.

(135) Culwell KR, Curtis KM, del Carmen Cravioto M. Safety of contraceptive method use among women with systematic lupus erythematosus: A systematic review. *Obstetrics and Gynecology,* 2009, 114(2 Pt 1):341-53.

(136) Cromer BA, Smith RD, Blair JM et al. A prospective study of adolescents who choose among levonorgestrel implant (Norplant), medroxyprogesterone acetate (Depo-Provera), or the combined oral contraceptive pill as contraception. *Pediatrics*, 1994, 94 :687-694.

(137) Gupta N, O'Brien R, Jacobsen LJ et al. Mood changes in adolescents using depo-medroxyprogesterone acetate for contraception: a prospective study. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2001, 14:71-76.

(138) Westoff C, Truman C. Depressive symptoms and Depo-Provera. *Contraception*, 1998, 57:237-240.

(139) Westoff C, Truman C, Kalmuss D et al. Depressive symptoms and Norplant contraceptive implants. *Contraception*, 1998, 57:241-245.

(140) Smith JS. Cervical cancer and use of hormonal contraceptives: a systematic review. *Lancet*, 2003, 361:1159-1167.

(141) Baeten JM, Nyange PM, Richardson BA et al. Hormonal contraception and risk of sexually transmitted disease acquisition: results from a prospective study. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2001, 185:380-385.

(142) Giuliano AR, Papenfuss M, Abrahamsen M et al. Human papillomavirus infection at the United States-Mexico border: implications for cervical cancer prevention and control. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 2001, 10:1129-1136.

(143) Jacobson DL, Peralta L, Farmer M et al. Relationship of hormonal contraception and cervical ectopy as measured by computerized planimetry to chlamydial infection in adolescents. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 2000, 27:313-319.

(144) Lavreys L, Chohan B, Ashley R et al. Human herpesvirus 8: seroprevalence and correlates in prostitutes in Mombasa, Kenya. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 2003, 187:359-363.

(145) Morrison CS, Bright P, Wong EL et al. Hormonal contraceptive use, cervical ectopy, and the acquisition of cervical infections. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 2004, 31:561-567.

(146) Moscicki AB, Hills N, Shiboski S et al. Risks for incident human papillomavirus infection and low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion development in young females. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 2001, 285:2995-3002.

(147) Nsofor BI, Bello CS, Ekwempu CC. Sexually transmitted disease among women attending a family planning clinic in Zaria, Nigeria. *International Journal of Gynaecology & Obstetrics*, 1989, 28:365-367.

(148) Ruijs GJ, Kauer FM, van Gijssel PM et al. Direct immunofluorescence for Chlamydia trachomatis on urogenital smears for epidemiological purposes. *European Journal of Obstetrics, Gynecology, & Reproductive Biology*, 1988, 27:289-297.

(149) Aklilu M, Messele T, Tsegaye A et al. Factors associated with HIV-1 infection among sex workers of Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. *AIDS*, 2001, 15:87-96.

(150) Allen S, Serufilira A, Gruber V et al. Pregnancy and contraception use among urban Rwandan women after HIV testing and counseling. *American Journal of Public Health*, 1993, 83:705-710.

(151) Baeten JM, Benki S, Chohan V et al. Hormonal contraceptive use, herpes simplex virus infection, and risk of HIV-1 acquisition among Kenyan women. *AIDS*, 2007, 21:1771-1777.

(152) Bulterys M, Chao A, Habimana P et al. Incident HIV-1 infection in a cohort of young women in Butare, Rwanda. *AIDS*, 1994, 8:1585-1591.

(153) Carael M, Van de Perre PH, Lepage PH et al. Human immunodeficiency virus transmission among heterosexual couples in Central Africa. *AIDS*, 1988, 2:201-205.

(154) Cohen CR, Duerr A, Pruithithada N et al. Bacterial vaginosis and HIV seroprevalence among female commercial sex workers in Chiang Mai, Thailand. *AIDS*, 1995, 9:1093-1097.

(155) Criniti A, Mwachari CW, Meier AS et al. Association of hormonal contraception and HIV-seroprevalence in Nairobi, Kenya. *AIDS*, 2003, 17:2667-2669.

(156) Kapiga SH, Shao JF, Lwihula GK et al. Risk factors for HIV infection among women in Dar-es-Salaam, Tanzania. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*, 1994, 7:301-309.

(157) Kapiga SH, Lyamuya EF, Lwihula GK et al. The incidence of HIV infection among women using family planning methods in Dar es Salaam, Tanzania. *AIDS*, 1998, 12:75-84.

(158) Kiddugavu M, Makumbi F, Wawer MJ et al. Hormonal contraceptive use and HIV-1 infection in a population-based cohort in Rakai, Uganda. *AIDS*, 2003, 17:233-240.

(159) Kilmarx PH, Limpakarnjanarat K, Mastro TD et al. HIV-1 seroconversion in a prospective study of female sex workers in northern Thailand: continued high incidence among brothel-based women. *AIDS*, 1998, 12:1889-1898.

(160) Kleinschmidt I, Rees H, Delany S et al. Injectable progestin contraceptive use and risk of HIV infection in a South African family planning cohort. *Contraception*, 2007, 75:461-467.

(161) Lavreys L, Baeten JM, Martin HL, Jr. et al. Hormonal contraception and risk of HIV-1 acquisition: results of a 10-year prospective study. *AIDS*, 2004, 18:695-697.

(162) Limpakarnjanarat K, Mastro TD, Saisorn S et al. HIV-1 and other sexually transmitted infections in a cohort of female sex workers in Chiang Rai, Thailand. *Sexually Transmitted Infections*, 1999, 75:30-35.

(163) Martin HL, Jr., Nyange PM, Richardson BA et al. Hormonal contraception, sexually transmitted diseases, and risk of heterosexual transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1998, 178:1053-1059.

(164) Mati JK, Hunter DJ, Maggwa BN et al. Contraceptive use and the risk of HIV infection in Nairobi, Kenya. *International Journal of Gynaecology & Obstetrics*, 1995, 48:61-67.

(165) Morrison CS, Richardson BA, Mmiro F et al. Hormonal contraception and the risk of HIV acquisition. *AIDS*, 2007, 21:85-95.

(166) Myer L, Denny L, Wright TC et al. Prospective study of hormonal contraception and women's risk of HIV infection in South Africa. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 2007, 36:166-174.

(167) Nagachinta T, Duerr A, Suriyanon V et al. Risk factors for HIV-1 transmission from HIV-seropositive male blood donors to their regular female partners in northern Thailand. *AIDS*, 1997, 11:1765-1772.

(168) Nzila N, Laga M, Thiam MA et al. HIV and other sexually transmitted diseases among female prostitutes in Kinshasa. *AIDS*, 1991, 5:715-721.

(169) Plourde PJ, Plummer FA, Pepin J et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection in women attending a sexually transmitted diseases clinic in Kenya.[comment]. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1992, 166:86-92.

(170) Rehle T, Brinkmann UK, Siraprapasiri T et al. Risk factors of HIV-1 infection among female prostitutes in Khon Kaen, Northeast Thailand. *Infection*, 1992, 20:328-331.

(171) Siraprapasiri T, Thanprasertsuk S, Rodklay A et al. Risk factors for HIV among prostitutes in Chiangmai, Thailand. *AIDS*, 1991, 5:579-582.

(172) Taneepanichskul S, Phuapradit W, Chaturachinda K. Association of contraceptives and HIV-1 infection in Thai female commercial sex workers. *Australian & New Zealand Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 1997, 37:86-88.

(173) Ungchusak K, Rehle T, Thammapornpilap P et al. Determinants of HIV infection among female commercial sex workers in northeastern Thailand: results from a longitudinal study.[erratum appears in J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr Hum Retrovirol 1998 Jun 1;18(2):192]. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes & Human Retrovirology*, 1996, 12:500-507.

(174) Allen S, Stephenson R, Weiss H et al. Pregnancy, hormonal contraceptive use, and HIV-related death in Rwanda. *Journal of Women's Health (Larchmont)*, 2007, 16:1017-1027.

(175) Cejtin HE, Jacobson L, Springer G et al. Effect of hormonal contraceptive use on plasma HIV-1-RNA levels among HIV-infected women. *AIDS*, 2003, 17:1702-1704.

(176) Clark RA, Kissinger P, Williams T. Contraceptive and sexually transmitted diseases protection among adult and adolescent women infected with human immunodeficiency virus. *International Journal of STD & AIDS*, 1996, 7:439-442.

(177) Clark RA, Theall KP, Amedee AM et al. Lack of association between genital tract HIV-1 RNA shedding and hormonal contraceptive use in a cohort of Louisiana women. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 2007, 34:870-872.

(178) Clemetson DB, Moss GB, Willerford DM et al. Detection of HIV DNA in cervical and vaginal secretions. Prevalence and correlates among women in Nairobi, Kenya. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 1993, 269:2860-2864.

(179) European Study Group on Heterosexual Transmission of HIV. Comparison of female to male and male to female transmission of HIV in 563 stable couples. *British Medical Journal*, 1992, 304:809-813.

(180) Kaul R, Kimani J, Nagelkerke NJ et al. Risk factors for genital ulcerations in Kenyan sex workers. The role of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 1997, 24:387-392.

(181) Kilmarx PH, Limpakarnjanarat K, Kaewkungwal J et al. Disease progression and survival with human immunodeficiency virus type 1 subtype E infection among female sex workers in Thailand. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 2000, 181:1598-1606.

(182) Kovacs A, Wasserman SS, Burns D et al. Determinants of HIV-1 shedding in the genital tract of women. *Lancet*, 2001, 358:1593-1601.

(183) Kreiss J, Willerford DM, Hensel M et al. Association between cervical inflammation and cervical shedding of human immunodeficiency virus DNA. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1994, 170:1597-1601.

(184) Lavreys L, Chohan V, Overbaugh J et al. Hormonal contraception and risk of cervical infections among HIV-1-seropositive Kenyan women. *AIDS*, 2004, 18:2179-2184.

(185) Mostad SB, Overbaugh J, DeVange DM et al. Hormonal contraception, vitamin A deficiency, and other risk factors for shedding of HIV-1 infected cells from the cervix and vagina. *Lancet*, 1997, 350:922-927.

(186) Richardson BA, Otieno PA, Mbori-Ngacha D et al. Hormonal contraception and HIV-1 disease progression among postpartum Kenyan women. *AIDS*, 2007, 21:749-753.

(187) Seck K, Samb N, Tempesta S et al. Prevalence and risk factors of cervicovaginal HIV shedding among HIV-1 and HIV-2 infected women in Dakar, Senegal. *Sexually Transmitted Infections*, 2001, 77:190-193.

(188) Stringer EM, Kaseba C, Levy J et al. A randomized trial of the intrauterine contraceptive device vs hormonal contraception in women who are infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2007, 197:144-148.

(189) Taneepanichskul S, Intaraprasert S, Phuapradit W et al. Use of Norplant implants in asymptomatic HIV-1 infected women. *Contraception*, 1997, 55:205-207.

(190) Taneepanichskul S, Tanprasertkul C. Use of Norplant implants in the immediate postpartum period among asymptomatic HIV-1-positive mothers. *Contraception*, 2001, 64:39-41.

(191) Wang CC, McClelland RS, Overbaugh J et al. The effect of hormonal contraception on genital tract shedding of HIV-1. *AIDS*, 2004, 18:205-209.

(192) Tagy AH, et al. The effect of low-dose combined oral contraceptive pills versus injectable contraceptive (Depot Provera) on liver function tests of women with compensated bilharzial liver fibrosis. *Contraception*, 2001, 64:173-176.

(193) Pyorala T, Vahapassi J, Huhtala M. The effect of lynestrenol and norethindrone on the carbohydrate and lipid metabolism in subjects with gestational diabetes. *Annales Chirurgiae Gynaecologiae*, 1979, 68:69-74.

(194) Radberg T, Gustafson A, Skryten A et al. Metabolic studies in women with previous gestational diabetes during contraceptive treatment: effects on serum lipids and high density lipoproteins. *Acta Endocrinologica*, 1982, 101:134-139.

(195) Kjos SL, Peters RK, Xiang A et al. Contraception and the risk of type 2 diabetes mellitus in Latina women with prior gestational diabetes mellitus. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 1998, 280:533-538.

(196) Nelson AL, Le MH, Musherraf Z et al. Intermediate-term glucose tolerance in women with a history of gestational diabetes: natural history and potential associations with breastfeeding and contraception. *Amercian Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2008, 198:699.e1-699.e8.

(197) Xiang AH, Kawakubo M, Kjos SL et al. Long-acting injectable progestin contraception and risk of type 2 diabetes in Latino women with prior gestational diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Care*, 2006, 29:613-617.

(198) Xiang AH, Kawakubo M, Buchanan TA et al. A longitudinal study of lipids and blood pressure in relation to method of contraception in Latino women with prior gestational diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Care*, 2007, 30:1952-1958.

(199) Diab KM, Zaki MM. Contraception in diabetic women: comparative metabolic study of norplant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate, low dose oral contraceptive pill and CuT380A. *Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecological Research*, 2000, 26:17-26.

(200) Lunt H, Brown LJ. Self-reported changes in capillary glucose and insulin requirements during the menstrual cycle. *Diabetic Medicine*, 1995, 13:525-530.

(201) Radberg T, Gustafson A, Skryten A et al. Oral contraception in diabetic women. A cross-over study on serum and high density lipoprotein (HDL) lipids and diabetes control during progestogen and combined estrogen/progestogen contraception. *Hormone Metabolism Research*, 1982, 14:61-65.

(202) Skouby SO, Molsted-Petersen L, Kuhl C et al. Oral contraceptives in diabetic women: metabolic effects of four compounds with different estrogen/progestogen profiles. *Fertility & Sterility*, 1986, 46:858-864.

(203) D'halluin V, Vilgrain V, Pelletier G et al. [Natural history of focal nodular hyperplasia. A retrospective study of 44 cases]. *Gastroenterology Clinical Biology*, 2001, 25:1008-1010.

(204) Mathieu D, Kobeiter H, Maison P et al. Oral contraceptive use and focal nodular hyperplasia of the liver. *Gastroenterology*, 2000, 118:560-564.

(205) Kapp N, Curtis KM. Hormonal contraceptive use among women with liver tumors: a systematic review. *Contraception*, 2009; 80: 387-390.

(206) Adadevoh BK, Isaacs WA. The effect of megestrol acetate on suckling. *American Journal of Medical Sciences*, 1973, 265:367-370.

(207) Barbosa IC, et al. Carbohydrate metabolism in sickle cell patients using subdermal implant containing nomegesterol acetate (Uniplant). *Contraception*, 2001, 63:263-265.

(208) de Abood M, et al. Effects of Depo-Provera or Microgynon on the painful crises of sickle cell anemia patients. *Contraception*, 1997, 56:313-316.

(209) De Ceulaer K, et al. Medroxyprogesterone acetate and homozygous sickle-cell disease. *Lancet*, 1982, 2:229-231.

(210) Howard RJ, Lillis C, Tuck SM. Contraceptives, counseling, and pregnancy in women with sickle cell disease. *British Medical Journal*, 1993, 306:1735-1737.

(211) Ladipo OA, et al. Norplant use by women with sickle cell disease. *International Journal of Gynaecology & Obstetrics*, 1993, 41:85-87.

(212) Nascimento ML, Ladipo OA, Coutinho E. Nomogestrol acetate contraceptive implant use by women with sickle cell disease. *Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, 1998, 64:433-438.

(213) Yoong WC, Tuck SM, Yardumian A. Red cell deformability in oral contraceptive pill users with sickle cell anaemia. *British Journal of Haematology*, 1999, 104:868-870.

(214) Odlind V, Olsson S-E. Enhanced metabolism of levonorgestrel during phenytoin treatment in a woman with Norplant implants. *Contraception*, 1986, 33:257-261.

(215) Schindlbeck C, Janni W, Friese K. Failure of Implanon contraception in a patient taking carbamazepine for epilepsia. *Archives of Gynecology & Obstetrics*, 2006, 273:255-256.

(216) Shane-McWhorter L, Cerven JD, MacFarlane LL et al. Enhanced metabolism of levonorgestrel during phenobarbital treatment and resultant pregnancy. *Pharmacotherapy*, 1998, 18:1360-1364.

(217) Reimers A, Helde G, Brodtkorb E. Ethinyl estradiol, not progestogens, reduces lamotrigine serum concentrations. *Epilepsia*, 2005, 46:1414-1417.

EMERGENCY CONTRACEPTIVE PILLS (ECPs)
(including levonorgestrel contraceptive pills and combined oral contraceptive pills)

ECPs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY	CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
PREGNANCY	NA	NA = not applicable **Clarification**: Although this method is not indicated for a woman with a known or suspected pregnancy, there is no known harm to the woman, the course of her pregnancy, or the fetus if ECPs are accidentally used.
BREASTFEEDING	1	
PAST ECTOPIC PREGNANCY	1	
HISTORY OF SEVERE CARDIOVASCULAR COMPLICATIONS* (ischaemic heart disease, cerebrovascular attack, or other thromboembolic conditions)	2	
ANGINA PECTORIS*	2	
MIGRAINE*	2	
SEVERE LIVER DISEASE* (including jaundice)	2	
REPEATED ECP USE	1	**Clarification**: Recurrent ECP use is an indication that the woman requires further counselling on other contraceptive options. Frequently repeated ECP use may be harmful for women with conditions classified as 2, 3 or 4 for CHC or POC use.
RAPE*	1	

ADDITIONAL COMMENTS

HISTORY OF SEVERE CARDIOVASCULAR COMPLICATIONS
The duration of use of ECPs is less than that of regular use of COCs or POPs and thus would be expected to have less clinical impact.

ANGINA PECTORIS
The duration of use of ECPs is less than that of regular use of COCs or POPs and thus would be expected to have less clinical impact.

MIGRAINE
The duration of use of ECPs is less than that of regular use of COCs or POPs and thus would be expected to have less clinical impact.

SEVERE LIVER DISEASE (INCLUDING JAUNDICE)
The duration of use of ECPs is less than that of regular use of COCs or POPs and thus would be expected to have less clinical impact.

RAPE
There are no restrictions for the use of ECPs in cases of rape.

INTRAUTERINE DEVICES (IUDs)

IUDs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation		CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	Cu-IUD	LNG-IUD	
Cu-IUD = copper-bearing IUD		**LNG-IUD** = levonorgestrel-releasing IUD (20 µg/24 hours)	
PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS AND REPRODUCTIVE HISTORY			
PREGNANCY	4	4	**Clarification**: The IUD is not indicated during pregnancy and should not be used because of the risk of serious pelvic infection and septic spontaneous abortion.
AGE*			
a) Menarche to < 20 years	2	2	
b) ≥ 20 years	1	1	
PARITY			**Evidence**: There are conflicting data regarding whether IUD use is associated with infertility among nulliparous women, although well-conducted studies suggest no increased risk. (1-9)
a) Nulliparous	2	2	
b) Parous	1	1	
POSTPARTUM* (breastfeeding or non-breastfeeding women, including caesarean section)			**Evidence**: Immediate postpartum copper IUD insertion, particularly when insertion occurs immediately after delivery of the placenta, is associated with lower expulsion rates than delayed postpartum insertion. Additionally, post-placental placement at the time of caesarean section has lower expulsion rates than post-placental vaginal insertions. Insertion complications of perforation and infection are not increased by IUD placement at any time during the postpartum period.(10-24)
a) < 48 hours including insertion immediately after delivery of the placenta			
(i) breastfeeding	1	3	
(ii) non-breastfeeding	1	1	
b) ≥ 48 hours to < 4 weeks	3	3	
c) ≥ 4 weeks	1	1	
d) Puerperal sepsis	4	4	
POST-ABORTION*			**Clarification**: IUDs can be inserted immediately after first-trimester, spontaneous or induced abortion. **Evidence**: There was no difference in risk of complications for immediate versus delayed insertion of an IUD after abortion. Expulsion was greater when an IUD was inserted following a second-trimester abortion versus following a first-trimester abortion. There were no differences in safety or expulsions for post-abortion insertion of an LNG-IUD compared with a Cu-IUD.(25-37)
a) First trimester	1	1	
b) Second trimester	2	2	
c) Immediate post-septic abortion	4	4	
PAST ECTOPIC PREGNANCY*	1	1	
HISTORY OF PELVIC SURGERY (see postpartum including caesarean section)	1	1	
SMOKING			
a) Age < 35 years	1	1	
b) Age ≥ 35 years			
(i) < 15 cigarettes/day	1	1	
ii) ≥ 15 cigarettes/day	1	1	

IUDs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation		CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	Cu-IUD	LNG-IUD	
Cu-IUD = copper-bearing IUD		**LNG-IUD** = levonorgestrel-releasing IUD (20 µg/24 hours)	
OBESITY			
a) ≥ 30 kg/m² BMI	1	1	
b) Menarche to < 18 years and ≥ 30 kg/m² BMI	1	1	
BLOOD PRESSURE MEASUREMENT UNAVAILABLE	NA	NA	**Clarification**: While a blood pressure measurement may be appropriate for good preventive health care, it is not materially related to safe and effective IUD use. Women should not be denied use of IUDs simply because their blood pressure cannot be measured.
CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE			
MULTIPLE RISK FACTORS FOR ARTERIAL CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE (such as older age, smoking, diabetes and hypertension)	1	2	
HYPERTENSION* For all categories of hypertension, classifications are based on the assumption that no other risk factors for cardiovascular disease exist. When multiple risk factors do exist, the risk of cardiovascular disease may increase substantially. A single reading of blood pressure level is not sufficient to classify a woman as hypertensive.			
a) History of hypertension, where blood pressure CANNOT be evaluated (including hypertension in pregnancy)	1	2	
b) Adequately controlled hypertension, where blood pressure CAN be evaluated	1	1	
c) Elevated blood pressure levels (properly taken measurements)			
(i) systolic 140-159 or diastolic 90-99 mm Hg	1	1	
(ii) systolic ≥160 or diastolic ≥100 mm Hg	1	2	
d) Vascular disease	1	2	
HISTORY OF HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE DURING PREGNANCY (where current blood pressure is measurable and normal)	1	1	

IUDs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation		CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	Cu-IUD	LNG-IUD	
Cu-IUD = copper-bearing IUD		**LNG-IUD** = levonorgestrel-releasing IUD (20 µg/24 hours)	
DEEP VENOUS THROMBOSIS (DVT)/ PULMONARY EMBOLISM (PE)*			
a) History of DVT/PE	1	2	
b) Acute DVT/PE	1	3	**Evidence**: Although evidence on the risk of venous thrombosis with the use of POCs is inconsistent, any small increased risk is substantially less than that with COCs. (38-40)
c) DVT/PE and established on anticoagulant therapy	1	2	**Evidence**: Although evidence on the risk of venous thrombosis with the use of POCs is inconsistent, any small increased risk is substantially less than that with COCs.(38-40) Limited evidence indicates that insertion of the LNG-IUD does not pose major bleeding risks in women on chronic anticoagulant therapy.(41-43)
d) Family history (first-degree relatives)	1	1	
e) Major surgery			
(i) with prolonged immobilization	1	2	
(ii) without prolonged immobilization	1	1	
f) Minor surgery without immobilization	1	1	
KNOWN THROMBOGENIC MUTATIONS (e.g., factor V Leiden; prothrombin mutation; protein S, protein C, and antithrombin deficiencies)	1	2	**Clarification**: Routine screening is not appropriate because of the rarity of the conditions and the high cost of screening.
SUPERFICIAL VENOUS THROMBOSIS			
a) Varicose veins	1	1	
b) Superficial thrombophlebitis	1	1	
CURRENT AND HISTORY OF ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE*	1	I: 2 / C: 3	
STROKE* (history of cerebrovascular accident)	1	2	
KNOWN HYPERLIPIDAEMIAS	1	2	**Clarification**: Routine screening is not appropriate because of the rarity of the conditions and the high cost of screening.
VALVULAR HEART DISEASE			
a) Uncomplicated	1	1	
b) Complicated (pulmonary hypertension, risk of atrial fibrillation, history of subacute bacterial endocarditis)	2	2	**Clarification**: Prophylactic antibiotics to prevent endocarditis are advised for insertion.

IUDs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation		CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	Cu-IUD	LNG-IUD	
Cu-IUD = copper-bearing IUD		**LNG-IUD** = levonorgestrel-releasing IUD (20 µg/24 hours)	
RHEUMATIC DISEASES			
SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS (SLE) People with SLE are at increased risk of ischaemic heart disease, stroke and venous thromboembolism. Categories assigned to such conditions in the *Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use* should be the same for women with SLE who present with these conditions. For all categories of SLE, classifications are based on the assumption that no other risk factors for cardiovascular disease are present; these classifications must be modified in the presence of such risk factors. Available evidence indicates that many women with SLE can be considered good candidates for most contraceptive methods, including hormonal contraceptives.(44-62)			
	I / C		
a) Positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies	1 / 1	3	**Evidence**: Antiphospholipid antibodies are associated with a higher risk for both arterial and venous thrombosis.(63;64)
b) Severe thrombocytopenia	3 / 2	2	**Clarification**: Severe thrombocytopenia increases the risk of bleeding. The category should be assessed according to the severity of the thrombocytopenia and its clinical manifestations. In women with very severe thrombocytopenia who are at risk for spontaneous bleeding, consultation with a specialist and certain pretreatments may be warranted. **Evidence**: The LNG-IUD may be a useful treatment for menorrhagia in women with severe thrombocytopenia.(43)
c) Immunosuppressive treatment	2 / 1	2	
d) None of the above	1 / 1	2	
NEUROLOGIC CONDITIONS			
HEADACHES*		I / C	**Clarification**: Any new headaches or marked changes in headaches should be evaluated.
a) Non-migrainous (mild or severe)	1	1 / 1	
b) Migraine			
(i) without aura			
Age < 35 years	1	2 / 2	
Age ≥ 35 years	1	2 / 2	
(ii) with aura, at any age	1	2 / 3	
EPILEPSY	1	1	
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS			
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS	1	1	**Clarification**: The classification is based on data for women with selected depressive disorders. No data on bipolar disorder or postpartum depression were available. There is a potential for drug interactions between certain antidepressant medications and hormonal contraceptives.
REPRODUCTIVE TRACT INFECTIONS AND DISORDERS			
VAGINAL BLEEDING PATTERNS		I / C	
a) Irregular pattern without heavy bleeding	1	1 / 1	
b) Heavy or prolonged bleeding (includes regular and irregular patterns)	2	1 / 2	**Clarification**: Unusually heavy bleeding should raise the suspicion of a serious underlying condition. **Evidence**: Evidence from studies examining the treatment effects of the LNG-IUD among women with heavy or prolonged bleeding reported no increase in adverse effects and found the LNG-IUD to be beneficial in the treatment of menorrhagia.(65-72)

IUDs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	Cu-IUD		LNG-IUD		
	Cu-IUD = copper-bearing IUD		**LNG-IUD** = levonorgestrel-releasing IUD (20 µg/24 hours)		
UNEXPLAINED VAGINAL BLEEDING (suspicious for serious condition)	I	C	I	C	
Before evaluation	4	2	4	2	**Clarification**: If pregnancy or an underlying pathological condition (such as pelvic malignancy) is suspected, it must be evaluated and the category adjusted after evaluation. There is no need to remove the IUD before evaluation.
ENDOMETRIOSIS	2		1		**Evidence**: LNG-IUD use among women with endometriosis decreased dysmenorrhoea, pelvic pain and dyspareunia. (73-77)
BENIGN OVARIAN TUMOURS (including cysts)	1		1		
SEVERE DYSMENORRHOEA*	2		1		
GESTATIONAL TROPHOBLASTIC DISEASE					**Evidence**: Limited evidence suggests that women using an IUD following uterine evacuation for a molar pregnancy are not at increased risk of developing post-molar trophoblastic disease when compared to women using other methods of contraception.(78-81)
a) Decreasing or undetectable β-hCG levels	3		3		
b) Persistently elevated β-hCG levels or malignant disease	4		4		
CERVICAL ECTROPION	1		1		
CERVICAL INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA (CIN)*	1		2		
CERVICAL CANCER* (awaiting treatment)	I	C	I	C	
	4	2	4	2	
BREAST DISEASE*					
a) Undiagnosed mass	1		2		
b) Benign breast disease	1		1		
c) Family history of cancer	1		1		
d) Breast cancer					
(i) current	1		4		
(ii) past and no evidence of current disease for 5 years	1		3		
ENDOMETRIAL CANCER*	I	C	I	C	
	4	2	4	2	
OVARIAN CANCER*	3	2	3	2	
UTERINE FIBROIDS*					**Evidence**: Among women with fibroids, there were no adverse health events with LNG-IUD use and there was a decrease in symptoms and size of fibroids for some women. (82-88)
a) Without distortion of the uterine cavity	1		1		
b) With distortion of the uterine cavity	4		4		

IUDs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	Cu-IUD		LNG-IUD		
Cu-IUD = copper-bearing IUD			**LNG-IUD** = levonorgestrel-releasing IUD (20 µg/24 hours)		
ANATOMICAL ABNORMALITIES*					
a) Distorted uterine cavity (any congenital or acquired uterine abnormality distorting the uterine cavity in a manner that is incompatible with IUD insertion	4		4		
b) Other abnormalities (including cervical stenosis or cervical lacerations) not distorting the uterine cavity or interfering with IUD insertion	2		2		
PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)*	I	C	I	C	**Clarification for continuation:** Treat the PID using appropriate antibiotics. There is usually no need for removal of the IUD if the client wishes to continue its use (See *Selected practice recommendations for contraceptive use*. WHO: Geneva, 2005). Continued use of an IUD depends on the woman's informed choice and her current risk factors for STIs and PID. **Evidence**: Among IUD users treated for PID, there was no difference in clinical course if the IUD was removed or left in place.(89-91)
a) Past PID (assuming no current risk factors for STIs)					
(i) with subsequent pregnancy	1	1	1	1	
(ii) without subsequent pregnancy	2	2	2	2	
b) PID - current	4	2	4	2	
STIs	I	C	I	C	
a) Current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonorrhoea	4	2	4	2	**Clarification for continuation:** Treat the STI using appropriate antibiotics. There is usually no need for removal of the IUD if the client wishes to continue its use. Continued use of an IUD depends on the woman's informed choice and her current risk factors for STIs and PID. **Evidence**: There is no evidence regarding whether IUD insertion among women with STIs increases the risk of PID compared with no IUD insertion. Among women who have an IUD inserted, the absolute risk of subsequent PID was low among women with STI at the time of insertion but greater than among women with no STI at the time of IUD insertion. (92-98)
b) Other STIs (excluding HIV and hepatitis)	2	2	2	2	
c) Vaginitis (including trichomonas vaginalis and bacterial vaginosis)	2	2	2	2	
d) Increased risk of STIs	2/3	2	2/3	2	**Clarification:** If a woman has a very high individual likelihood of exposure to gonorrhoea or chlamydial infection, the condition is Category 3. **Evidence**: Using an algorithm to classify STI risk status among IUD users, one study reported that 11% of high-STI-risk women experienced IUD-related complications compared with 5% of those not classified as high risk.(99)
HIV/AIDS					
HIGH RISK OF HIV	I	C	I	C	**Evidence**: Among women at risk for HIV, copper IUD use did not increase risk of HIV acquisition.(100-110)
	2	2	2	2	

IUDs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	Cu-IUD		LNG-IUD		
Cu-IUD = copper-bearing IUD			**LNG-IUD** = levonorgestrel-releasing IUD (20 µg/24 hours)		
HIV-INFECTED	I	C	I	C	**Evidence**: Among IUD users, limited evidence shows no increased risk of overall complications or infectious complications when comparing HIV- infected with non-infected women. IUD use did not adversely affect progression of HIV when compared to hormonal contraceptive use among HIV-infected women. Furthermore, IUD use among HIV-infected women was not associated with increased risk of transmission to sexual partners.(111-119)
	2	2	2	2	
AIDS	3	2	3	2	**Clarification for continuation**: IUD users with AIDS should be closely monitored for pelvic infection.
Clinically well on ARV therapy	2	2	2	2	
OTHER INFECTIONS					
SCHISTOSOMIASIS					
a) Uncomplicated	1		1		
b) Fibrosis of the liver (if severe, see cirrhosis)	1		1		
TUBERCULOSIS*	I	C	I	C	
a) Non-pelvic	1	1	1	1	
a) Pelvic	4	3	4	3	
MALARIA	1		1		
ENDOCRINE CONDITIONS					
DIABETES					
a) History of gestational disease	1		1		
b) Non-vascular disease					
(i) non-insulin dependent	1		2		**Evidence**: Limited evidence on the use of the LNG-IUD among women with insulin- or non-insulin-dependent diabetes suggests that these methods have little effect on short-term or long-term diabetes control (e.g. HbA_{1c} levels), haemostatic markers or lipid profile.(120;121)
(ii) insulin dependent	1		2		
c) Nephropathy/retinopathy/ neuropathy	1		2		
d) Other vascular disease or diabetes of > 20 years' duration	1		2		
THYROID DISORDERS					
a) Simple goitre	1		1		
b) Hyperthyroid	1		1		
c) Hypothyroid	1		1		
GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS					
GALL BLADDER DISEASE					
a) Symptomatic					
(i) treated by cholecystectomy	1		2		
(ii) medically treated	1		2		
(iii) current	1		2		
b) Asymptomatic	1		2		

IUDs do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation				CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	Cu-IUD		LNG-IUD		
Cu-IUD = copper-bearing IUD			**LNG-IUD** = levonorgestrel-releasing IUD (20 µg/24 hours)		
HISTORY OF CHOLESTASIS*					
a) Pregnancy-related	1		1		
b) Past-COC related	1		2		
VIRAL HEPATITIS					
a) Acute or flare	1		1		
b) Carrier	1		1		
c) Chronic	1		1		
CIRRHOSIS					
a) Mild (compensated)	1		1		
b) Severe (decompensated)	1		3		
LIVER TUMOURS*					
a) Benign					
(i) Focal nodular hyperplasia	1		2		
(ii) Hepatocellular adenoma	1		3		
b) Malignant (hepatoma)	1		3		
ANAEMIAS					
THALASSAEMIA*	2		1		
SICKLE CELL DISEASE*	2		1		
IRON-DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA*	2		1		
DRUG INTERACTIONS					
ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY	I	C	I	C	**Clarification**: There is no known interaction between antiretroviral therapy and IUD use. However, AIDS as a condition is classified as Category 3 for insertion and Category 2 for continuation unless the woman is clinically well on antiretroviral therapy, in which case both insertion and continuation are classified as Category 2 (see HIV/AIDS condition).
a) Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs)	2/3	2	2/3	2	
b) Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs)	2/3	2	2/3	2	
c) Ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors	2/3	2	2/3	2	
ANTICONVULSANT THERAPY					
a) Certain anticonvulsants (phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine)	1		1		**Evidence**: Limited evidence suggests that use of certain anticonvulsants does not interfere with the contraceptive effectiveness of the LNG-IUD.(122)
b) Lamotrigine	1		1		**Evidence**: No drug interactions have been reported among women with epilepsy taking lamotrigine and using the LNG-IUD.(123)
ANTIMICROBIAL THERAPY					
a) Broad-spectrum antibiotics	1		1		
b) Antifungals	1		1		
c) Antiparasitics	1		1		
d) Rifampicin or rifabutin therapy	1		1		**Evidence**: Rifampicin or rifabutin therapy: One cross-sectional survey found that rifabutin had no impact on the effectiveness of LNG-IUD.(122)

ADDITIONAL COMMENTS

AGE
Menarche to < 20 years: there is concern both about the risk of expulsion due to nulliparity and risk of STIs due to sexual behaviour in younger age groups.

POSTPARTUM
< 48 hours, ≥ 48 hours to < 4 weeks: there is concern that the neonate may be at risk due to exposure to steroid hormones with LNG-IUD use during the first 4 weeks.

PUERPERAL SEPSIS
Insertion of an IUD may substantially worsen the condition.

POST-ABORTION
Immediate post-septic abortion: insertion of an IUD may substantially worsen the condition.

PAST ECTOPIC PREGNANCY
The absolute risk of ectopic pregnancy is extremely low due to the high effectiveness of IUDs. However, when a woman becomes pregnant during IUD use, the relative likelihood of ectopic pregnancy is greatly increased.

HYPERTENSION
There is theoretical concern about the effect of LNG on lipids. There is no restriction for copper IUDs.

DEEP VEIN THROMBOSIS/PULMONARY EMBOLISM
The LNG-IUD may be a useful treatment for menorrhagia in women on chronic anticoagulation therapy.

CURRENT AND HISTORY OF ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE
There is theoretical concern about the effect of LNG on lipids. There is no restriction for copper IUDs.

STROKE
There is theoretical concern about the effect of LNG on lipids. There is no restriction for copper IUDs.

HEADACHES
Aura is a specific focal neurologic symptom. For more information on this and other diagnostic criteria, see: Headache Classification Subcommittee of the International Headache Society. The International Classification of Headache Disorders, 2nd edition. *Cephalalgia*. 2004;24(Suppl 1):1-150. http://ihs-classification.org/en/02_klassifikation (accessed 21 Aug 2009).

SEVERE DYSMENORRHOEA
Dysmenorrhoea may intensify with copper IUD use. LNG-IUD use has been associated with reduction of dysmenorrhoea.

CERVICAL INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA (CIN)
There is some theoretical concern that LNG-IUDs may enhance the progression of CIN.

CERVICAL CANCER (AWAITING TREATMENT)
There is concern about the increased risk of infection and bleeding at insertion. The IUD will likely need to be removed at the time of treatment but, until then, the woman is at risk of pregnancy.

BREAST DISEASE
Breast cancer: breast cancer is a hormonally sensitive tumour. Concerns about progression of the disease may be less with LNG-IUDs than with COCs or higher-dose POCs.

ENDOMETRIAL CANCER
There is concern about the increased risk of infection, perforation and bleeding at insertion. The IUD will likely need to be removed at the time of treatment but, until then, the woman is at risk of pregnancy.

OVARIAN CANCER
The IUD will likely need to be removed at the time of treatment but, until then, the woman is at risk of pregnancy.

UTERINE FIBROIDS
Without distortion of the uterine cavity: women with heavy or prolonged bleeding should be assigned the category for that condition.

With distortion of the uterine cavity: pre-existing uterine fibroids that distort the uterine cavity may be incompatible with insertion and proper placement of the IUD.

ANATOMICAL ABNORMALITIES
Distorted uterine cavity: in the presence of an anatomic abnormality that distorts the uterine cavity, proper IUD placement may not be possible.

PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)
IUDs do not protect against STI/HIV/PID. In women at low risk of STIs, IUD insertion poses little risk of PID. Current risk of STIs and desire for future pregnancy are relevant considerations.

TUBERCULOSIS:
Pelvic: insertion of an IUD may substantially worsen the condition.

HISTORY OF CHOLESTASIS
There is concern that a history of CHC-related cholestasis may predict subsequent cholestasis with LNG use. Whether there is any risk with use of an LNG-IUD is unclear.

LIVER TUMOURS
There is no evidence regarding hormonal contraceptive use among women with hepatocellular adenoma. Given that COC use in healthy women is associated with development and growth of hepatocellular adenoma, it is not known whether other hormonal contraceptives have similar effects.

THALASSAEMIA
There is concern about an increased risk of blood loss with copper IUDs.

SICKLE CELL DISEASE

There is concern about an increased risk of blood loss with copper IUDs.

IRON-DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA

There is concern about an increased risk of blood loss with copper IUDs.

REFERENCE LIST

(1) Cramer DW, et al. Tubal infertility and the intrauterine device. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 1985, 312:941-947.

(2) Daling JR, et al. Primary tubal infertility in relation to the use of an intrauterine device. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 1985, 312:937-941.

(3) Daling JR, et al. The intrauterine device and primary tubal infertility. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 1992, 326:203-204.

(4) Delbarge W, et al. Return to fertility in nulliparous and parous women after removal of the GyneFix intrauterine contraceptive system. *European Journal of Contraception & Reproductive Health Care*, 2002, 7:24-30.

(5) Doll H, Vessey M, Painter R. Return of fertility in nulliparous women after discontinuation of the intrauterine device: comparison with women discontinuing other methods of contraception. *BJOG: an International Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 2001, 108:304-314.

(6) Hubacher D, et al. Use of copper intrauterine devices and the risk of tubal infertility among nulligravid women. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 2001, 345:561-567.

(7) Skjeldestad FE, Bratt H. Return of fertility after use of IUDs (Nova-T, MLCu250 and MLCu375). *Advances in Contraception*, 1987, 3:139-145.

(8) Urbach DR, et al. Association of perforation of the appendix with female tubal infertility. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 2001, 153:566-571.

(9) Wilson JC. A prospective New Zealand study of fertility after removal of copper intrauterine contraceptive devices for conception and because of complications: a four-year study. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1989, 160:391-396.

(10) Bonilla Rosales F., Aguilar Zamudio ME., Cazares Montero Mde L. et al. Factors for expulsion of intrauterine device Tcu380A applied immediately postpartum and after a delayed period. *Revista Médica del Instituto del Seguro Social*, 2005, 43:5-10.

(11) Brenner PF. A Clinical-trial of the Delta-T intrauterine-device - immediate postpartum insertion. *Contraception*, 1983, 28:135-147.

(12) Celen S, Moroy P, Sucak A et al. Clinical outcomes of early postplacental insertion of intrauterine contraceptive devices. *Contraception*, 2004, 69:279-282.

(13) Chi IC, Wilkens L, Rogers S. Expulsions in immediate postpartum insertions of Lippes Loop D and Copper T IUDs and their counterpart Delta devices – an epidemiological analysis. *Contraception*, 1985, 32:119-134.

(14) El-Shafei MM, Mashali A, Hassan EO et al. Postpartum and postabortion intrauterine device insertion unmet needs of safe reproductive health: three years experience of a Mansoura University Hospital. *Egyptian Society of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2000, 26:253-262.

(15) Eroglu K, Akkuzu G, Vural G et al. Comparison of efficacy and complications of IUD insertion in immediate postplacental/early postpartum period with interval period: 1 year follow-up. *Contraception*, 2006, 74:376-381.

(16) Lara R, Sanchez RA, Aznar R. [Application of intreauterine device through the incision of the cesarean section]. *Ginecologia y Obstetricia de Mexico*, 1989, 57:23-27.

(17) Mishell DR, Jr., Roy S. Copper intrauterine contraceptive device event rates following insertion 4 to 8 weeks post partum. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1982, 143:29-35.

(18) Morrison C, Waszak C, Katz K et al. Clinical outcomes of two early postpartum IUD insertion programs in Africa. *Contraception*, 1996, 53:17-21.

(19) Muller ALL, Ramos JGL, Martins-Costa SH et al. Transvaginal ultrasonographic assessment of the expulsion rate of intrauterine devices inserted in the immediate postpartum period: a pilot study. *Contraception*, 2005, 72:192-195.

(20) Thiery M, Vanderpas H, Delbeke L et al. Comparative Performance of 2 Copper-Wired Iuds (Ml-Cu-250 and T-Cu-200) - Immediate Postpartum and Interval Insertion. *Contraceptive Delivery Systems*, 1980, 1:27-35.

(21) Thiery M, Van Kets H, Van der PH et al. The ML Cu250; clinical experience in Belgium and The Netherlands. *British Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 1982, 89:51-53.

(22) Welkovic S, Costa LO, Faundes A et al. Post-partum bleeding and infection after post-placental IUD insertion. *Contraception*, 2001, 63:155-158.

(23) Zhou SW, Chi IC. Immediate postpartum IUD insertions in a Chinese hospital--a two year follow-up. *International Journal of Gynaecology & Obstetrics*, 1991, 35:157-164.

(24) Kapp N, Curtis KM. Intrauterine device insertion during the postpartum period: a systematic review. *Contraception*, 2009, 80:327-336.

(25) El Tagy A, et al. Safety and acceptability of post-abortal IUD insertion and the importance of counseling. *Contraception*, 2003, 67:229-234.

(26) Gillett PG, et al. A comparison of the efficacy and acceptability of the Copper-7 intrauterine device following immediate or delayed insertion after first-trimester therapeutic abortion. *Fertility & Sterility*, 1980, 34:121-124.

(27) Grimes D, Schulz K, Stanwood N. Immediate postabortal insertion of intrauterine devices. [update of Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2000;(2):CD001777; PMID:10796820]. [Review] [28 refs]. *Cochrane Database Systematic Reviews*, 2002, CD001777.

(28) Gupta I, Devi PK. Studies on immediate post-abortion copper 'T' device. *Indian Journal of Medical Research*, 1975, 63:736-739.

(29) Moussa A. Evaluation of postabortion IUD insertion in Egyptian women. *Contraception*, 2001, 63:315-317.

(30) Pakarinen P, Toivonen J, Luukkainen T. Randomized comparison of levonorgestrel- and copper-releasing intrauterine systems immediately after abortion, with 5 years' follow-up. *Contraception*, 2003, 68:31-34.

(31) Stanwood NL, Grimes DA, Schulz KF. Insertion of an intrauterine contraceptive device after induced or spontaneous abortion: a review of the evidence. *British Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 2001, 108:1168-1173.

(32) Suvisaari J, Lahteenmaki P. Detailed analysis of menstrual bleeding patterns after postmensstrual and postabortal insertion of a copper IUD or a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system. *Contraception*, 1996, 54:201-208.

(33) The World Health Organization's Special Programme of Research, Development, and Research Training in Human Reproduction. IUD insertion following spontaneous abortion: a clinical trial of the TCu 220C, Lippes loop D, and copper 7. *Studies in Family Planning*, 1983, 14:109-114.

(34) The World Health Organization's Special Programme of Research, Development, and Research Training in Human Reproduction. IUD insertion following termination of pregnancy: a clinical trial of the TCu 220C, Lippes loop D, and copper 7. *Studies in Family Planning*, 1983, 14:99-108.

(35) The World Health Organization's Special Programme of Research, Development, and Research Training in Human Reproduction. The Alza T IPCS 52, a longer acting progesterone IUD: safety and efficacy compared to the TCu220C and multiload 250 in two randomized multicentre trials. *Clinical Reproduction & Fertility*, 1983, 2:113-128.

(36) Timonen H, Luukkainen T. Immediate postabortion insertion of the copper-T (TCu-200) with eighteen months follow-up. *Contraception*, 1974, 9:153-160.

(37) Zhang PZ. Five years experience with the copper T 200 in Shanghai - 856 cases. *Contraception*, 1980, 22:561-571.

(38) Heinemann LA, Assmann A, DoMinh T et al. Oral progestogen-only contraceptives and cardiovascular risk: results from the Transnational Study on Oral Contraceptives and the health of Young Women. *European Journal of Contraception and Reproductive Health Care*, 1999, 4:67-73.

(39) Vasilakis C, Jick H, Mar Melero-Montes M. Risk of idiopathic venous thromboembolism in users of progestogens alone. *Lancet*, 1999, 354:1610-1611.

(40) World Health Organization. Cardiovascular disease and use of oral and injectable progestogen-only contraceptives and combined injectable contraceptives. Results of an international, multicenter, case-control study. *Contraception*, 1998, 57:315-324.

(41) Kingman CE, Kadir RA, Lee CA et al. The use of the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system for treatment of menorrhagia in women with inherited bleeding disorders. *BJOG: an International Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 2004, 111:1425-1428.

(42) Pisoni CN, Cuadrado MJ, Khamashta MA et al. Treatment of menorrhagia associated with oral anticoagulation: efficacy and safety of the levonorgestrel releasing intrauterine device (Mirena coil). *Lupus*, 2006, 15:877-880.

(43) Schaedel ZE, Dolan G, Powell MC. The use of the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system in the management of menorrhagia in women with hemostatic disorders. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2005, 193:1361-1363.

(44) Bernatsky S, Ramsey-Goldman R, Gordon C et al. Factors associated with abnormal Pap results in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*, 2004, 43:1386-1389.

(45) Bernatsky S, Clarke A, Ramsey-Goldman R et al. Hormonal exposures and breast cancer in a sample of women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*, 2004, 43:1178-1181.

(46) Chopra N, Koren S, Greer WL et al. Factor V Leiden, prothrombin gene mutation, and thrombosis risk in patients with antiphospholipid antibodies. *Journal of Rheumatology*, 2002, 29:1683-1688.

(47) Esdaile JM, Abrahamowicz M, Grodzicky T et al. Traditional Framingham risk factors fail to fully account for accelerated atherosclerosis in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 2001, 44:2331-2337.

(48) Julkunen HA. Oral contraceptives in systemic lupus erythematosus: side-effects and influence on the activity of SLE. *Scandinavian Journal of Rheumatology*, 1991, 20:427-433.

(49) Julkunen HA, Kaaja R, Friman C. Contraceptive practice in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *British Journal of Rheumatology*, 1993, 32:227-230.

(50) Jungers P, Dougados M, Pelissier C et al. Influence of oral contraceptive therapy on the activity of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 1982, 25:618-623.

(51) Manzi S, Meilahn EN, Rairie JE et al. Age-specific incidence rates of myocardial infarction and angina in women with systemic lupus erythematosus: comparison with the Framingham Study. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 1997, 145:408-415.

(52) McAlindon T, Giannotta L, Taub N et al. Environmental factors predicting nephritis in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Annals of Rheumatic Diseases*, 1993, 52:720-724.

(53) McDonald J, Stewart J, Urowitz MB et al. Peripheral vascular disease in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Annals of Rheumatic Diseases*, 1992, 51:56-60.

(54) Mintz G, Gutierrez G, Deleze M et al. Contraception with progestogens in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Contraception*, 1984, 30:29-38.

(55) Petri M. Musculoskeletal complications of systemic lupus erythematosus in the Hopkins Lupus Cohort: an update. *Arthritis Care and Research*, 1995, 8:137-145.

(56) Petri M, Kim MY, Kalunian KC et al. Combined oral contraceptives in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 2005, 353:2550-2558.

(57) Petri M. Lupus in Baltimore: evidence-based 'clinical pearls' from the Hopkins Lupus Cohort. *Lupus*, 2005, 14:970-973.

(58) Sanchez-Guerrero J, Uribe AG, Jimenez-Santana L et al. A trial of contraceptive methods in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 2005, 353:2539-2549.

(59) Sarabi ZS, Chang E, Bobba R et al. Incidence rates of arterial and venous thrombosis after diagnosis of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 2005, 53:609-612.

(60) Schaedel ZE, Dolan G, Powell MC. The use of the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system in the management of menorrhagia in women with haemostatic disorders. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2005, 193:1361-1363.

(61) Somers E, Magder LS, Petri M. Antiphospholipid antibodies and incidence of venous thrombosis in a cohort of patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Journal of Rheumatology*, 2002, 29:2531-2536.

(62) Urowitz MB, Bookman AA, Koehler BE et al. The bimodal mortality pattern of systemic lupus erythematosus. *American Journal of Medicine*, 1976, 60:221-225.

(63) Choojitarom K, Verasertniyom O, Totemchokchyakarn K et al. Lupus nephritis and Raynaud's phenomenon are significant risk factors for vascular thrombosis in SLE patients with positive antiphospholipid antibodies. *Clinical Rheumatology*, 2008, 27:345-351.

(64) Wahl DG, Guillemin F, de Maistre E et al. Risk for venous thrombosis related to antiphospholipid antibodies in systemic lupus erythematosus – a meta-analysis. *Lupus*, 1997, 6:467-473.

(65) Barrington JW, Arunkalaivanan AS, bdel-Fattah M. Comparison between the levonorgestrel intrauterine system (LNG-IUS) and thermal balloon ablation in the treatment of menorrhagia. *European Journal of Obstetrics, Gynecology, & Reproductive Biology*, 2003, 108:72-74.

(66) Gupta B, Mittal S, Misra R et al. Levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system vs. transcervical endometrial resection for dysfunctional uterine bleeding. *International Journal of Gynaecology & Obstetrics*, 2006, 95:261-266.

(67) Hurskainen R, Teperi J, Rissanen P et al. Quality of life and cost-effectiveness of levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system versus hysterectomy for treatment of menorrhagia: a randomized trial.[see comment]. *Lancet*, 2001, 357:273-277.

(68) Istre O, Trolle B. Treatment of menorrhagia with the levonorgestrel intrauterine system versus endometrial resection. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2001, 76:304-309.

(69) Koh SC, Singh K. The effect of levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system use on menstrual blood loss and the haemostatic, fibrinolytic/inhibitor systems in women with menorrhagia. *Journal of Thrombosis & Haemostasis*, 2007, 5:133-138.

(70) Lethaby AE, Cooke I, Rees M. Progesterone/progestogen releasing intrauterine systems versus either placebo or any other medication for heavy menstrual bleeding. *Cochrane Database Systematic Reviews*, 2000, -CD002126.

(71) Magalhaes J, Aldrighi JM, de Lima GR. Uterine volume and menstrual patterns in users of the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system with idiopathic menorrhagia or menorrhagia due to leiomyomas. *Contraception*, 2007, 75:193-198.

(72) Stewart A, Cummins C, Gold L et al. The effectiveness of the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system in menorrhagia: A systematic review. *British Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 2001, 108:74-86.

(73) Fedele L, Bianchi S, Zanconato G et al. Use of a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device in the treatment of rectovaginal endometriosis. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2001, 75:485-488.

(74) Lockhat FBE. The effect of a levonorgestrel intrauterine system (LNG-IUS) on symptomatic endometriosis. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2002, 77 Suppl 1:S24.

(75) Petta CA, Ferriani RA, Abrao MS et al. Randomized clinical trial of a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system and a depot GnRH analogue for the treatment of chronic pelvic pain in women with endometriosis. *Human Reproduction*, 2005, 20:1993-1998.

(76) Vercellini P, Aimi G, Panazza S et al. A levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system for the treatment of dysmenorrhea associated with endometriosis: a pilot study. *Fertility & Sterility*, 1999, 72:505-508.

(77) Vercellini P, Frontino G, De GO et al. Comparison of a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device versus expectant management after conservative surgery for symptomatic endometriosis: a pilot study. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2003, 80:305-309.

(78) Adewole IF, Oladokun A, Fawole AO et al. Fertility regulatory methods and development of complications after evacuation of complete hydatidiform mole. *Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 2000, 20:68-69.

(79) Deicas RE, et al. The role of contraception in the development of postmolar trophoblastic tumour. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1991, 78:221-226.

(80) Ho Yuen B, Burch P. Relationship of oral contraceptives and the intrauterine contraceptive devices to the regression of concentration of the beta subunit of human chorionic gonadotropin and invasive complications after molar pregnancy. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 1983, 145:214-217.

(81) Gaffield ME, Kapp K, Curtis KM. Combined oral contraceptive and intrauterine device use among women with gestational trophoblastic disease. *Contraception* 2009; 80:363-371.

(82) Fedele L, et al. Treatment of adenomyosis-associated menorrhagia with a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device. *Fertility & Sterility*, 1997, 68:426-429.

(83) Grigorieva V, et al. Use of a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system to treat bleeding related to uterine leiomyomas. *Fertility & Sterility*, 2003, 79:1194-1198.

(84) Mercoria F, et al. The effect of a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device in the treatment of myoma-related menorrhagia. *Contraception*, 2003, 67:277-280.

(85) Wildemeersch D, Schacht E, Wildemeersch P. Treatment of primary and secondary dysmenorrhea with a novel 'frameless' intrauterine levonorgestrel-releasing drug delivery system: a pilot study. *European Journal of Contraception & Reproductive Health Care*, 2001, 6:192-198.

(86) Wildemeersch D, Schacht E. The effect on menstrual blood loss in women with uterine fibroids of a novel 'frameless' intrauterine levonorgestrel-releasing drug delivery system: a pilot study. *European Journal of Obstetrics, Gynecology & Reproductive Biology*, 2002, 102:74-79.

(87) Wildemeersch D, Schacht E, Wildemeersch P. Contraception and treatment in the perimenopause with a novel 'frameless' intrauterine levonorgestrel-releasing drug delivery system: an extended pilot study. *Contraception*, 2002, 66:93-99.

(88) Wildemeersch D, Schacht E, Wildemeersch P. Performance and acceptability of intrauterine release of levonorgestrel with a miniature delivery system for hormonal substitution therapy, contraception and treatment in peri and postmenopausal women. *Maturitas*, 2003, 44:237-245.

(89) Larsson B, Wennergren M. Investigation of a copper-intrauterine device (Cu-IUD) for possible effect on frequency and healing of pelvic inflammatory disease. *Contraception*, 1977, 15:143-149.

(90) Soderberg G, Lindgren S. Influence of an intrauterine device on the course of an acute pelvic inflammatory disease. *Contraception*, 1981, 24:137-143.

(91) Teisala K. Removal of an intrauterine device and the treatment of acute pelvic inflammatory disease. *Annals of Medicine*, 1989, 21:63-65.

(92) Faundes A, et al. The risk of inadvertent intrauterine device insertion in women carriers of endocervical Chlamydia trachomatis. *Contraception*, 1998, 58:105-109.

(93) Ferraz do Lago R, et al. Follow-up of users of intrauterine device with and without bacterial vaginosis and other cervicovaginal infections. *Contraception*, 2003, 68:105-109.

(94) Morrison CS, Sekadde-Kigondu C, Miller WC et al. Use of sexually transmitted disease risk assessment algorithms for selection of intrauterine device candidates. *Contraception*, 1999, 59:97-106.

(95) Pap-Akeson M, et al. Genital tract infections associated with the intrauterine contraceptive device can be reduced by inserting the threads into the uterine cavity. *British Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 1992, 99:676-679.

(96) Sinei SK, et al. Preventing IUDC-related pelvic infection: the efficacy of prophylactic doxycycline at insertion. *British Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 1990, 97:412-419.

(97) Skjeldestad FE, et al. IUD users in Norway are at low risk of for genital C. trachomatis infection. *Contraception*, 1996, 54:209-212.

(98) Walsh TL, et al. Effect of prophylactic antibiotics on morbidity associated with IUD insertion: results of a pilot randomized controlled trial. *Contraception*, 1994, 50:319-327.

(99) Morrison CS, Sekadde-Kigondu C, Miller WC et al. Use of sexually transmitted disease risk assessment algorithms for selection of intrauterine device candidates. *Contraception*, 1999, 59:97-106.

(100) Carael M, Van de Perre PH, Lepage PH et al. Human immunodeficiency virus transmission among heterosexual couples in Central Africa. *AIDS*, 1988, 2:201-205.

(101) European Study Group on Heterosexual Transmission of HIV. Comparison of female to male and male to female transmission of HIV in 563 stable couples. *British Medical Journal*, 1992, 304:809-813.

(102) Kapiga SH, Shao JF, Lwihula GK et al. Risk factors for HIV infection among women in Dar-es-Salaam, Tanzania. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*, 1994, 7:301-309.

(103) Kapiga SH, Lyamuya EF, Lwihula GK et al. The incidence of HIV infection among women using family planning methods in Dar es Salaam, Tanzania. *AIDS*, 1998, 12:75-84.

(104) Mann JM, et al. HIV infection and associated risk factors in female prostitutes in Kinshasa, Zaire. *AIDS*, 1998, 2:249-254.

(105) Martin HL, Jr., Nyange PM, Richardson BA et al. Hormonal contraception, sexually transmitted diseases, and risk of heterosexual transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1998, 178:1053-1059.

(106) Mati JK, Hunter DJ, Maggwa BN et al. Contraceptive use and the risk of HIV infection in Nairobi, Kenya. *International Journal of Gynaecology & Obstetrics*, 1995, 48:61-67.

(107) Nicolosi A, Correa Leite ML, Musicco M et al. The efficiency of male-to-female and female-to-male sexual transmission of the human immunodeficiency virus: a study of 730 stable couples. Italian Study Group on HIV Heterosexual Transmission.[comment]. *Epidemiology*, 1994, 5:570-575.

(108) Plourde PJ, Plummer FA, Pepin J et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection in women attending a sexually transmitted diseases clinic in Kenya.[comment]. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1992, 166:86-92.

(109) Sinei SK, Fortney JA, Kigondu CS et al. Contraceptive use and HIV infection in Kenyan family planning clinic attenders. *International Journal of STD & AIDS*, 1996, 7:65-70.

(110) Spence MR, Robbins SM, Polansky M et al. Seroprevalence of human immunodeficiency virus type I (HIV-1) antibodies in a family-planning population. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 1991, 18:143-145.

(111) European Study Group on Heterosexual Transmission of HIV. Comparison of female to male and male to female transmission of HIV in 563 stable couples. *British Medical Journal*, 1992, 304:809-813.

(112) Heikinheimo O, et al. The levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system (LNG-IUS) in HIV-infected women--effects on bleeding patterns, ovarian function and genital shedding of HIV. *Human Reproduction*, 2006, 21:2857-2861.

(113) Kovacs A, et al. Determinants of HIV-1 shedding in the genital tract of women. *Lancet*, 2001, 358:1593-1601.

(114) Lehtovirta P, Paavonen J, Heikinheimo O. Experience with the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system among HIV-infected women. *Contraception*, 2007, 75:37-39.

(115) Morrison CS, et al. Is the intrauterine device appropriate contraception for HIV-1 infected women? *British Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 2001, 108:784-790.

(116) Mostad SB, et al. Hormonal contraception, vitamin A deficiency, and other risk factors for shedding of HIV-1 infected cells from the cervix and vagina. *Lancet*, 1997, 350:922-927.

(117) Richardson BA, et al. Effect of intrauterine device use on cervical shedding of HIV-1 DNA. *AIDS*, 1999, 13:2091-2097.

(118) Sinei SK, et al. Complications of use of intrauterine devices among HIV-1 infected women. *Lancet*, 1998, 351:1238-1241.

(119) Stringer EM, et al. A randomized trial of the intrauterine contraceptive device vs. hormonal contraception in women who are infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2007, 197:144-148.

(120) Grigoryan OR, Grodnitskaya EE, Andreeva EN et al. Contraception in perimenopausal women with diabetes mellitus. *Gynecological Endocrinology*, 2006, 22:198-206.

(121) Rogovskaya S, Rivera R, Grimes DA et al. Effect of a levonorgestrel intrauterine system on women with type 1 diabetes: a randomized trial. *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 2005, 105:811-815.

(122) Bounds W, Guillebaud J. Observational series on women using the contraceptive Mirena concurrently with anti-epileptic and other enzyme-inducing drugs. *The Journal of Family Planning and Reproductive Health Care*, 2002, 28:78-80.

(123) Reimers A, Helde G, Brodtkorb E. Ethinyl estradiol, not progestogens, reduces lamotrigine serum concentrations. *Epilepsia*, 2005, 46:1414-1417.

COPPER IUD FOR EMERGENCY CONTRACEPTION (E-IUD)

This method is highly effective for preventing pregnancy. A copper-releasing IUD (Cu-IUD) can be used within 5 days of unprotected intercourse as an emergency contraceptive. However, when the time of ovulation can be estimated, the Cu-IUD can be inserted beyond 5 days after intercourse, if necessary, as long as the insertion does not occur more than 5 days after ovulation.

The eligibility criteria for interval Cu-IUD insertion also apply for the insertion of Cu-IUDs as emergency contraception.

IUDs for emergency contraception do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY	CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
PREGNANCY	4	**Clarification**: The IUD is not indicated during pregnancy and should not be used because of the risk of serious pelvic infection and septic spontaneous abortion.
RAPE*		
a) High risk of STI	3	
b) Low risk of STI	1	

ADDITIONAL COMMENTS

Rape: IUDs do not protect against STI/HIV/PID. Among women with chlamydial infection or gonorrhoea, the potential increased risk of PID with IUD insertion should be avoided. The concern is less for other STIs

BARRIER METHODS (BARR)

If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	C	S	D	
C = male latex condoms, male polyurethane condoms, female condoms		**S** = spermicide	**D** = diaphragm (with spermicide), cervical cap	
Women with conditions which make pregnancy an unacceptable risk should be advised that barrier methods for pregnancy prevention may not be appropriate for those who cannot use them consistently and correctly because of their relatively higher typical-use failure rates.				
PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS AND REPRODUCTIVE HISTORY				
PREGNANCY	NA	NA	NA	NA = not applicable **Clarification**: None of these methods are relevant for contraception during known pregnancy. However, for women who continue to be at risk of STI/HIV during pregnancy, the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended.
AGE				
a) Menarche to < 40 years	1	1	1	
b) ≥ 40 years	1	1	1	
PARITY				
a) Nulliparous	1	1	1	
b) Parous	1	1	2	**Clarification**: There is a higher risk of cervical cap failure in parous women than in nulliparous women.
POSTPARTUM				
a) < 6 weeks postpartum	1	1	NA	**Clarification**: The diaphragm and cap are unsuitable until uterine involution is complete.
b) ≥ 6 weeks postpartum	1	1	1	
POST-ABORTION				
a) First trimester	1	1	1	
b) Second trimester	1	1	1	**Clarification**: The diaphragm and cap are unsuitable until 6 weeks after second-trimester abortion.
c) Immediate post-septic abortion	1	1	1	
PAST ECTOPIC PREGNANCY	1	1	1	
HISTORY OF PELVIC SURGERY	1	1	1	
SMOKING				
a) Age < 35 years	1	1	1	
b) Age ≥ 35 years				
(i) <15 cigarettes/day	1	1	1	
ii) ≥15 cigarettes/day	1	1	1	
OBESITY*				
a) ≥ 30 kg/m^2 BMI	1	1	1	
b) Menarche to < 18 years and ≥ 30 kg/m^2 BMI	1	1	1	
BLOOD PRESSURE MEASUREMENT UNAVAILABLE	NA	NA	NA	**Clarification**: While a blood pressure measurement may be appropriate for good preventive health care, it is not required for safe and effective barrier method use. Women should not be denied the use of barrier methods simply because their blood pressure cannot be measured.

If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	C	S	D	
C = male latex condoms, male polyurethane condoms, female condoms		**S** = spermicide		**D** = diaphragm (with spermicide), cervical cap
Women with conditions which make pregnancy an unacceptable risk should be advised that barrier methods for pregnancy prevention may not be appropriate for those who cannot use them consistently and correctly because of their relatively higher typical-use failure rates.				
CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE				
MULTIPLE RISK FACTORS FOR ARTERIAL CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE (such as older age, smoking, diabetes and hypertension)	1	1	1	
HYPERTENSION				
a) History of hypertension, where blood pressure CANNOT be evaluated (including hypertension in pregnancy)	1	1	1	
b) Adequately controlled hypertension, where blood pressure CAN be evaluated	1	1	1	
c) Elevated blood pressure levels (properly taken measurements)				
(i) systolic 140-159 or diastolic 90-99 mm Hg	1	1	1	
(ii) systolic ≥160 or diastolic ≥100 mm Hg	1	1	1	
d) Vascular disease	1	1	1	
HISTORY OF HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE DURING PREGNANCY (where current blood pressure is measurable and normal)	1	1	1	
DEEP VENOUS THROMBOSIS (DVT)/ PULMONARY EMBOLISM (PE)				
a) History of DVT/PE	1	1	1	
b) Acute DVT/PE	1	1	1	
c) DVT/PE and established on anticoagulant therapy	1	1	1	
d) Family history (first-degree relatives)	1	1	1	
e) Major surgery				
(i) with prolonged immobilization	1	1	1	
(ii) without prolonged immobilization	1	1	1	
f) Minor surgery without immobilization	1	1	1	

If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	C	S	D	
C = male latex condoms, male polyurethane condoms, female condoms		**S** = spermicide		**D** = diaphragm (with spermicide), cervical cap
Women with conditions which make pregnancy an unacceptable risk should be advised that barrier methods for pregnancy prevention may not be appropriate for those who cannot use them consistently and correctly because of their relatively higher typical-use failure rates.				
KNOWN THROMBOGENIC MUTATIONS (e.g., factor V Leiden; prothrombin mutation; protein S, protein C, and antithrombin deficiencies)	1	1	1	**Clarification**: Routine screening is not appropriate because of the rarity of the conditions and the high cost of screening.
SUPERFICIAL VENOUS THROMBOSIS				
a) Varicose veins	1	1	1	
b) Superficial thrombophlebitis	1	1	1	
CURRENT AND HISTORY OF ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE	1	1	1	
STROKE (history of cerebrovascular accident)	1	1	1	
KNOWN HYPERLIPIDAEMIAS	1	1	1	**Clarification**: Routine screening is not appropriate because of the rarity of the conditions and the high cost of screening.
VALVULAR HEART DISEASE*				
a) Uncomplicated	1	1	1	
b) Complicated (pulmonary hypertension, risk of atrial fibrillation, history of subacute bacterial endocarditis)	1	1	2	
RHEUMATIC DISEASES				
SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS (SLE)				
a) Positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies	1	1	1	
b) Severe thrombocytopenia	1	1	1	
c) Immunosuppressive treatment	1	1	1	
d) None of the above	1	1	1	
NEUROLOGIC CONDITIONS				
HEADACHES				
a) Non-migrainous (mild or severe)	1	1	1	
b) Migraine				
(i) without aura				
Age < 35 years	1	1	1	
Age ≥ 35 years	1	1	1	
(ii) with aura, at any age	1	1	1	
EPILEPSY	1	1	1	
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS				
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS	1	1	1	

If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	C	S	D	
C = male latex condoms, male polyurethane condoms, female condoms	**S** = spermicide		**D** = diaphragm (with spermicide), cervical cap	
Women with conditions which make pregnancy an unacceptable risk should be advised that barrier methods for pregnancy prevention may not be appropriate for those who cannot use them consistently and correctly because of their relatively higher typical-use failure rates.				
REPRODUCTIVE TRACT INFECTIONS AND DISORDERS				
UNEXPLAINED VAGINAL BLEEDING (suspicious for serious condition) Before evaluation	1	1	1	**Clarification**: If pregnancy or an underlying pathological condition (such as pelvic malignancy) is suspected, it must be evaluated and the category adjusted after evaluation.
ENDOMETRIOSIS	1	1	1	
BENIGN OVARIAN TUMOURS (including cysts)	1	1	1	
SEVERE DYSMENORRHOEA	1	1	1	
GESTATIONAL TROPHOBLASTIC DISEASE				
a) Decreasing or undetectable β-hCG levels	1	1	1	
b) Persistently elevated β-hCG levels or malignant disease	1	1	1	
CERVICAL ECTROPION	1	1	1	
CERVICAL INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA (CIN)	1	1	1	**Clarification**: The cap should not be used. There is no restriction for diaphragm use.
CERVICAL CANCER* (awaiting treatment)	1	2	1	**Clarification**: The cap should not be used. There is no restriction for diaphragm use.
BREAST DISEASE				
a) Undiagnosed mass	1	1	1	
b) Benign breast disease	1	1	1	
c) Family history of cancer	1	1	1	
d) Breast cancer				
(i) current	1	1	1	
(ii) past and no evidence of current disease for 5 years	1	1	1	
ENDOMETRIAL CANCER	1	1	1	
OVARIAN CANCER	1	1	1	
UTERINE FIBROIDS				
a) Without distortion of the uterine cavity	1	1	1	
b) With distortion of the uterine cavity	1	1	1	
ANATOMICAL ABNORMALITIES	1	1	NA	**Clarification**: The diaphragm cannot be used in certain cases of prolapse. Cap use is not appropriate for a client with a markedly distorted cervical anatomy.

If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	C	S	D	
C = male latex condoms, male polyurethane condoms, female condoms		**S** = spermicide	**D** = diaphragm (with spermicide), cervical cap	
Women with conditions which make pregnancy an unacceptable risk should be advised that barrier methods for pregnancy prevention may not be appropriate for those who cannot use them consistently and correctly because of their relatively higher typical-use failure rates.				
PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)				
a) Past PID (assuming no current risk factors for STIs)				
(i) with subsequent pregnancy	1	1	1	
(ii) without subsequent pregnancy	1	1	1	
b) PID - current	1	1	1	
STIs				
a) Current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonorrhoea	1	1	1	
b) Other STIs (excluding HIV and hepatitis)	1	1	1	
c) Vaginitis (including trichomonas vaginalis and bacterial vaginosis)	1	1	1	
d) Increased risk of STIs	1	1	1	
HIV/AIDS				
HIGH RISK OF HIV*	1	4	4	**Evidence:** Repeated and high-dose use of the spermicide nonoxynol-9 was associated with increased risk of genital lesions, which may increase the risk of acquiring HIV infection.(1)
HIV-INFECTED*	1	3	3	
AIDS*	1	3	3	
OTHER INFECTIONS				
SCHISTOSOMIASIS				
a) Uncomplicated	1	1	1	
b) Fibrosis of the liver	1	1	1	
TUBERCULOSIS				
a) Non-pelvic	1	1	1	
a) Pelvic	1	1	1	
MALARIA	1	1	1	
HISTORY OF TOXIC SHOCK SYNDROME*	1	1	3	
URINARY TRACT INFECTION*	1	1	2	

If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	C	S	D	
C = male latex condoms, male polyurethane condoms, female condoms		**S** = spermicide	**D** = diaphragm (with spermicide), cervical cap	
Women with conditions which make pregnancy an unacceptable risk should be advised that barrier methods for pregnancy prevention may not be appropriate for those who cannot use them consistently and correctly because of their relatively higher typical-use failure rates.				
ENDOCRINE CONDITIONS				
DIABETES				
a) History of gestational disease	1	1	1	
b) Non-vascular disease				
(i) non-insulin dependent	1	1	1	
(ii) insulin dependent	1	1	1	
c) Nephropathy/retinopathy/ neuropathy	1	1	1	
d) Other vascular disease or diabetes of > 20 years' duration	1	1	1	
THYROID DISORDERS				
a) Simple goitre	1	1	1	
b) Hyperthyroid	1	1	1	
c) Hypothyroid	1	1	1	
GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS				
GALL BLADDER DISEASE				
a) Symptomatic				
(i) treated by cholecystectomy	1	1	1	
(ii) medically treated	1	1	1	
(iii) current	1	1	1	
b) Asymptomatic	1	1	1	
HISTORY OF CHOLESTASIS				
a) Pregnancy-related	1	1	1	
b) Past-COC related	1	1	1	
VIRAL HEPATITIS				
a) Acute or flare	1	1	1	
b) Carrier	1	1	1	
c) Chronic	1	1	1	
CIRRHOSIS				
a) Mild (compensated)	1	1	1	
b) Severe (decompensated)	1	1	1	
LIVER TUMOURS				
a) Benign				
(i) Focal nodular hyperplasia	1	1	1	
(ii) Hepatocellular adenoma	1	1	1	
b) Malignant (hepatoma)	1	1	1	

If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY I = initiation, C = continuation			CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	C	S	D	
C = male latex condoms, male polyurethane condoms, female condoms		**S** = spermicide		**D** = diaphragm (with spermicide), cervical cap
Women with conditions which make pregnancy an unacceptable risk should be advised that barrier methods for pregnancy prevention may not be appropriate for those who cannot use them consistently and correctly because of their relatively higher typical-use failure rates.				
ANAEMIAS				
THALASSAEMIA	1	1	1	
SICKLE CELL DISEASE	1	1	1	
IRON-DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA	1	1	1	
DRUG INTERACTIONS				
ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY				
a) Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs)	1	3	3	**Clarification**: There is no known drug interaction between ARV therapy and barrier method use. However, HIV infection and AIDS as conditions are classified as Category 3 for spermicides and diaphragms (see HIV/AIDS condition above.)
b) Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs)	1	3	3	
c) Ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors	1	3	3	
ANTICONVULSANT THERAPY				
a) Certain anticonvulsants (phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine)	1	1	1	
b) Lamotrigine	1	1	1	
ANTIMICROBIAL THERAPY				
a) Broad-spectrum antibiotics	1	1	1	
b) Antifungals	1	1	1	
c) Antiparasitics	1	1	1	
d) Rifampicin or rifabutin therapy	1	1	1	
ALLERGY TO LATEX	3	1	3	**Clarification**: This does not apply to plastic condoms/diaphragm

ADDITIONAL COMMENTS

OBESITY
Severe obesity may make diaphragm and cap placement difficult.

VALVULAR HEART DISEASE
Risk of urinary tract infection with the diaphragm may increase in a client with subacute bacterial endocarditis.

CERVICAL CANCER (AWAITING TREATMENT)
Repeated and high-dose use of nonoxynol-9 can cause vaginal and cervical irritation or abrasions.

HIGH RISK OF HIV
Category 4 for diaphragm use is assigned due to concerns about the spermicide, not the diaphragm.

HIV-INFECTED
Use of spermicides and/or diaphragms (with spermicide) can disrupt the cervical mucosa, which may lead to increased viral shedding and HIV transmission to uninfected sexual partners.

AIDS
Use of spermicides and/or diaphragms (with spermicide) can disrupt the cervical mucosa, which may lead to increased viral shedding and HIV transmission to uninfected sexual partners.

HISTORY OF TOXIC SHOCK SYNDROME
Toxic shock syndrome has been reported in association with contraceptive sponge and diaphragm use.

URINARY TRACT INFECTION
There is a potential increase of urinary tract infection with diaphragms and spermicides.

REFERENCE LIST

(1) Wilkinson D, et al. Nonoxynol-9 for preventing vaginal acquisition of HIV infection by women from men. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2002; 4(CD003936).

FERTILITY AWARENESS-BASED METHODS (FAB)

Fertility awareness-based (FAB) methods of family planning involve identification of the fertile days of the menstrual cycle, whether by observing fertility signs such as cervical secretions and basal body temperature, or by monitoring cycle days. FAB methods can be used in combination with abstinence or barrier methods during the fertile time. If barrier methods are used, refer to the section on barrier methods (BARR).

There are no medical conditions that become worse because of use of FAB methods. In general, these methods can be provided without concern for health effects to people who choose them. However, there are a number of conditions that make their use more complex. The existence of these conditions suggests that (1) use of these methods should be delayed until the condition is corrected or resolved, or (2) they will require special counselling, and a more highly trained provider is generally necessary to ensure correct use.

Definitions

SYM	Symptoms-based methods	FAB methods based on observation of fertility signs (e.g. cervical secretions, basal body temperature) such as the Cervical Mucus Method, the Symptothermal Method, and the Two Day Method.
CAL	Calendar-based methods	FAB methods based on calendar calculations such as the Calendar Rhythm Method and the Standard Days Method.
A	Accept	There is no medical reason to deny the particular FAB method to a woman in this circumstance.
C	Caution	The method is normally provided in a routine setting, but with extra preparation and precautions. For FAB methods, this usually means that special counselling may be needed to ensure correct use of the method by a woman in this circumstance.
D	Delay	Use of this method should be delayed until the condition is evaluated or corrected. Alternative temporary methods of contraception should be offered.
NA	Not applicable	

FERTILITY AWARENESS-BASED METHODS

Fertility awareness-based methods do not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY		CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
	SYM	CAL	
PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS AND REPRODUCTIVE HISTORY			
Women with conditions which make pregnancy an unacceptable risk should be advised that fertility awareness-based methods for pregnancy prevention may not be appropriate for them because of their relatively-higher typical-use failure rates.			
PREGNANCY	NA	NA	**Clarification**: Fertility awareness-based methods are not relevant during pregnancy.
LIFE STAGE			**Clarification**: Menstrual irregularities are common in post-menarche and peri-menopause and may complicate the use of fertility awareness-based methods
a) Post-menarche	C	C	
b) Peri-menopause	C	C	
BREASTFEEDING*			
a) < 6 weeks postpartum	D	D	
b) ≥ 6 weeks	C	D	
c) After menses begin	C	C	
POSTPARTUM* (in non-breastfeeding women)			
a) < 4 weeks	D	D	
b) ≥ 4 weeks	A	D	
POST-ABORTION*	C	D	
REPRODUCTIVE TRACT INFECTIONS AND DISORDERS			
IRREGULAR VAGINAL BLEEDING*	D	D	
VAGINAL DISCHARGE*	D	A	
OTHER			
USE OF DRUGS THAT AFFECT CYCLE REGULARITY, HORMONES AND/OR FERTILITY SIGNS*	C/D	C/D	
DISEASES THAT ELEVATE BODY TEMPERATURE*			
a) Chronic diseases	C	A	
b) Acute diseases	D	A	

ADDITIONAL COMMENTS

BREASTFEEDING
Fertility awareness-based methods during breastfeeding may be less effective than when not breastfeeding.

BREASTFEEDING
< 6 weeks postpartum: women who are primarily breastfeeding and are amenorrhoeic are unlikely to have sufficient ovarian function to produce detectable fertility signs and hormonal changes during the first 6 weeks postpartum. However, the likelihood of resumption of fertility increases with time postpartum and with substitution of breast milk by other foods.

After menses begin: when the woman notices fertility signs (particularly cervical secretions), she can use a symptoms-based method. First postpartum menstrual cycles in breastfeeding women vary significantly in length. It takes several cycles for the return to regularity. When she has had at least three postpartum menses and her cycles are regular again, she can use a calendar-based method. When she has had at least four postpartum menses and her most recent cycle was 26-32 days long, she can use the Standard Days Method. Prior to that time, a barrier method should be offered if the woman plans to use a fertility awareness-based method later.

POSTPARTUM
< 4 weeks: non-breastfeeding woman are not likely to have sufficient ovarian function to either require a fertility awareness-based method or have detectable fertility signs or hormonal changes prior to 4 weeks postpartum. Although the risk of pregnancy is low, a method that is appropriate for the postpartum period should be offered.

≥ 4 weeks: non-breastfeeding women are likely to have sufficient ovarian function to produce detectable fertility signs and/or hormonal changes at this time; the likelihood increases rapidly with time postpartum. Women can use calendar-based methods as soon as they have completed at least three postpartum menses and cycles are regular again. A woman can use the Standard Days Method when she has had at least four postpartum menses and her most recent cycle was 26-32 days long. Methods appropriate for the postpartum period should be offered prior to that time.

POST-ABORTION
Post-abortion women are likely to have sufficient ovarian function to produce detectable fertility signs and/or hormonal changes: the likelihood increases with time post-abortion. Women can start using calendar-based methods after they have had at least one post-abortion menses (e.g. women who before this pregnancy had most cycles between 26 and 32 days can use the Standard Days Method then). Methods appropriate for the post-abortion period should be offered prior to that time.

IRREGULAR VAGINAL BLEEDING
The presence of this condition makes fertility awareness-based methods unreliable. Therefore, barrier methods should be recommended until the bleeding pattern is compatible with proper method use. The condition should be evaluated and treated as necessary.

VAGINAL DISCHARGE
Because vaginal discharge makes recognition of cervical secretions difficult, the condition should be evaluated and treated if needed prior to providing methods based on cervical secretions.

USE OF DRUGS THAT AFFECT CYCLE REGULARITY, HORMONES AND/OR FERTILITY SIGNS
Use of certain mood-altering drugs such as lithium, tricyclic antidepressants, and anti-anxiety therapies, as well as certain antibiotics and anti-inflammatory drugs, may alter cycle regularity or affect fertility signs. The condition should be carefully evaluated and a barrier method offered until the degree of effect has been determined or the drug is no longer being used. Calendar-based methods are only appropriate if menstrual cycles are regular and predictable.

DISEASES THAT ELEVATE BODY TEMPERATURE
Elevated temperature levels may make basal body temperature difficult to interpret, but there is no effect on cervical secretions. Thus the use of a method that relies on temperature should be delayed until the acute disease abates. Temperature-based methods are not appropriate for women with chronically elevated temperatures. In addition, some chronic diseases interfere with cycle regularity, making calendar-based methods difficult to interpret.

The lactational amenorrhoea method does not protect against STI/HIV. If there is a risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms should be recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

Women with conditions that make pregnancy an unacceptable risk should be advised that the lactational amenorrhoea method may not be appropriate for them because of its relatively higher typical-use failure rates.

The Bellagio Consensus provided the scientific basis for defining the conditions under which breastfeeding can be used safely and effectively for birth-spacing purposes, and programmatic guidelines were developed for the use of lactational amenorrhoea in family planning. These guidelines include the following three criteria, all of which must be met to ensure adequate protection from an unplanned pregnancy: (1) amenorrhoea; (2) fully or nearly fully breastfeeding; and (3) less than six months postpartum.

The main indications for breastfeeding remain the need to provide an ideal food for the infant and to protect it against disease. There are no medical conditions in which the use of lactational amenorrhoea is restricted and there is no documented evidence of its negative impact on maternal health. However, certain conditions or obstacles which affect breastfeeding may also affect the duration of amenorrhoea, making this a less useful choice for family planning purposes. These include:

HIV INFECTION

Breastfeeding should be promoted, protected, and supported in all populations, for all women who are HIV-negative or of unknown HIV status. A woman infected with HIV, however, can transmit the virus to her child through breastfeeding. Yet breastfeeding, and especially early and exclusive breastfeeding, is one of the most critical factors for improving child survival. Breastfeeding also confers many other benefits in addition to reducing the risk of death.

There is now strong evidence that giving antiretroviral drugs (ARVs) to either the HIV-infected mother or HIV-exposed infant or both can significantly reduce the risk of transmitting HIV through breastfeeding (http://www.who.int/hiv/topics/mtct). This transforms the landscape in which decision should be made by national health authorities and individual mothers. In the presence of ARVs, either lifelong antiretroviral therapy to the mother or other ARV interventions to the mother or infant, the infant can receive all the benefits of breastfeeding with little risk of becoming HIV infected. In some well-resourced countries with low infant and child mortality rates, avoidance of all breastfeeding will still be appropriate.

HIV-infected mothers should receive the appropriate ARV interventions and should exclusively breastfeed their infants for the first 6 months of life, introducing appropriate complementary foods thereafter, and continue breastfeeding for the first 12 months of life. Breastfeeding should then only stop once a nutritionally adequate and safe diet without breast milk can be provided. When mothers decide to stop breastfeeding, they should stop gradually within one month and infants should be provided with safe and adequate replacement feeds to enable normal growth and development.

Mothers known to be HIV infected should only give commercial infant formula milk as a replacement feed to their HIV-uninfected infants or infants who are of unknown HIV status, when specific conditions are met:

a. safe water and sanitation are assured at the household level and in the community, **and,**

b. the mother, or other caregiver can reliably provide sufficient infant formula milk to support normal growth and development of the infant, **and,**

c. the mother or caregiver can prepare it cleanly and frequently enough so that it is safe and carries a low risk of diarrhoea and malnutrition, **and,**

d. the mother or caregiver can, in the first six months, exclusively give infant formula milk, **and,**

e. the family is supportive of this practice, **and,**

f. the mother or caregiver can access health care that offers comprehensive child health services.

If infants and young children are known to be HIV infected, mothers are strongly encouraged to exclusively breastfeed for the first 6 months of life and continue breastfeeding as per the recommendations

for the general population, that is up to two years or beyond.

Women who are HIV infected should receive skilled counselling to help them. They should also have access to follow-up care and support, including family planning and nutritional support.

MEDICATION USED DURING BREASTFEEDING

In order to protect infant health, breastfeeding is not recommended for women using such drugs as: anti-metabolites, bromocriptine, certain anticoagulants, corticosteroids (high doses), ciclosporin, ergotamine, lithium, mood-altering drugs, radioactive drugs and reserpine.

CONDITIONS AFFECTING THE NEWBORN

Congenital deformities of the mouth, jaw or palate; newborns who are small-for-date or premature and needing intensive neonatal care; and certain metabolic disorders of the infant can all make breastfeeding difficult.

COITUS INTERRUPTUS (CI)

Coitus interruptus does not protect against STI/HIV. If there is a risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms should be recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

Women with conditions that make pregnancy an unacceptable risk should be advised that coitus interruptus may not be appropriate for them because of its relatively higher typical-use failure rates.

Coitus interruptus (CI), also known as withdrawal, is a traditional family planning method in which the man completely removes his penis from the vagina, and away from the external genitalia of the female partner, before he ejaculates. CI prevents sperm from entering the woman's vagina, thereby preventing contact between spermatozoa and the ovum.

This method may be appropriate for couples:

- who are highly motivated and able to use this method effectively;
- with religious or philosophical reasons for not using other methods of contraception;
- who need contraception immediately and have entered into a sexual act without alternative methods available;
- who need a temporary method while awaiting the start of another method;
- who have intercourse infrequently.

Some benefits of CI are that the method, if used correctly, does not affect breastfeeding and is always available for primary use or use as a back-up method. In addition, CI involves no economic cost or use of chemicals. There are no health risks associated directly with CI. Men and women who are at high risk of STI/HIV infection should use a condom with each act of intercourse.

CI is unforgiving of incorrect use, and its effectiveness depends on the willingness and ability of the couple to use withdrawal with every act of intercourse.

SURGICAL STERILIZATION PROCEDURES (STER)

Given that sterilization is a surgical procedure that is intended to be permanent, special care must be taken to assure that every client makes a voluntary informed choice of the method. Particular attention must be given in the case of young people, nulliparous women, men who have not yet been fathers, and clients with mental health problems, including depressive conditions. All clients should be carefully counselled about the intended permanence of sterilization and the availability of alternative, long-term, highly effective methods. This is of extra concern for young people. The national laws and existing norms for the delivery of sterilization procedures must be considered in the decision process.

Transcervical methods of female sterilization are not addressed in these recommendations.

There is no medical condition that would absolutely restrict a person's eligibility for sterilization, although some conditions and circumstances will require that certain precautions are taken, including those where the recommendation is C (caution), D (delay), or S (special). For some of these conditions and circumstances, the theoretical or proven risks may outweigh the advantages of undergoing sterilization, particularly female sterilization. Where the risks of sterilization outweigh the benefits, long-term, highly effective contraceptive methods are a preferable alternative. Decisions in this regard will have to be made on an individual basis, considering the risks and benefits of sterilization versus the risks of pregnancy, and the availability and acceptability of highly effective, alternative methods.

The following classification of conditions into the four different categories is based on an in-depth review of the epidemiological and clinical evidence relevant to medical eligibility. Sterilization procedures should only be performed by well-trained providers in appropriate clinical settings using proper equipment and supplies. Appropriate service delivery guidelines, including infection-prevention protocols, should be followed to maximize client safety.

DEFINITIONS

A	Accept	There is no medical reason to deny sterilization to a person with this condition.
C	Caution	The procedure is normally conducted in a routine setting, but with extra preparation and precautions.
D	Delay	The procedure is delayed until the condition is evaluated and/or corrected. Alternative temporary methods of contraception should be provided.
S	Special	The procedure should be undertaken in a setting with an experienced surgeon and staff, equipment needed to provide general anaesthesia, and other back-up medical support. For these conditions, the capacity to decide on the most appropriate procedure and anaesthesia regimen is also needed. Alternative temporary methods of contraception should be provided, if referral is required or there is otherwise any delay.

FEMALE SURGICAL STERILIZATION

Sterilization does not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY **A** = accept **C** = caution **D** = delay **S** = special	CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS AND REPRODUCTIVE HISTORY		
PREGNANCY	D	
YOUNG AGE	C	**Clarification**: Young women, like all women, should be counselled about the permanency of sterilization and the availability of alternative, long-term, highly effective methods. **Evidence**: Studies show that up to 20% of women sterilized at a young age later regret this decision, and that young age is one of the strongest predictors of regret (including request for referral information and obtaining reversal) that can be identified before sterilization.(1-19)
PARITY*		
a) Nulliparous	A	
b) Parous	A	
BREASTFEEDING	A	
POSTPARTUM*		
a) < 7 days	A	
7 to < 42 days	D	
≥ 42 days	A	
b) Pre-eclampsia/eclampsia		
(i) mild pre-eclampsia	A	
(ii) severe pre-eclampsia/ eclampsia	D	
c) Prolonged rupture of membranes, 24 hours or more	D	
d) Puerperal sepsis, intrapartum or puerperal fever	D	
e) Severe antepartum or postpartum haemorrhage	D	
f) Severe trauma to the genital tract (cervical or vaginal tear at time of delivery)	D	
g) Uterine rupture or perforation	S	**Clarification**: If exploratory surgery or laparoscopy is conducted and the patient is stable, repair of the problem and tubal sterilization may be performed concurrently if no additional risk is involved.
POST-ABORTION*		
a) Uncomplicated	A	
b) Post-abortal sepsis or fever	D	
c) Severe post-abortal haemorrhage	D	
d) Severe trauma to the genital tract (cervical or vaginal tear at time of abortion)	D	
e) Uterine perforation	S	**Clarification**: If exploratory surgery or laparoscopy is conducted, repair of the problem and tubal sterilization may be performed concurrently if no additional risk is involved.
f) Acute haematometra	D	

Sterilization does not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY **A** = accept **C** = caution **D** = delay **S** = special	CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
PAST ECTOPIC PREGNANCY	A	
SMOKING		
a) Age < 35 years	A	
b) Age ≥ 35 years		
(i) < 15 cigarettes/day	A	
ii) ≥ 15 cigarettes/day	A	
OBESITY		**Clarification**: The procedure may be more difficult. There is an increased risk of wound infection and disruption. Obese women may have limited respiratory function and may be more likely to require general anaesthesia. **Evidence**: Women who were obese were more likely to have complications when undergoing sterilization.(20-23)
a) ≥ 30 kg/m^2 BMI	C	
b) Menarche to < 18 years and ≥ 30 kg/m^2 BMI	C	
CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE		
MULTIPLE RISK FACTORS FOR ARTERIAL CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE* (such as older age, smoking, diabetes and hypertension)	S	
HYPERTENSION For all categories of hypertension, classifications are based on the assumption that no other risk factors for cardiovascular disease exist. When multiple risk factors do exist, the risk of cardiovascular disease may increase substantially. A single reading of blood pressure level is not sufficient to classify a woman as hypertensive.		
a) Hypertension: adequately controlled	C	
b) Elevated blood pressure levels (properly taken measurements)		**Clarification**: Elevated blood pressure should be controlled before surgery. There are increased anaesthesia-related risks and an increased risk of cardiac arrhythmia with uncontrolled hypertension. Careful monitoring of blood pressure intra-operatively is particularly necessary in this situation.
(i) systolic 140-159 or diastolic 90-99 mm Hg	C	
(ii) systolic ≥160 or diastolic ≥100 mm Hg	S	
c) Vascular disease	S	
HISTORY OF HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE DURING PREGNANCY (where current blood pressure is measurable and normal)	A	
DEEP VENOUS THROMBOSIS (DVT)/ PULMONARY EMBOLISM (PE)		**Clarification**: To reduce the risk of DVT/PE, early ambulation is recommended.
a) History of DVT/PE	A	
b) Acute DVT/PE	D	
c) DVT/PE and established on anticoagulant therapy	S	
d) Family history (first-degree relatives)	A	
e) Major surgery		
(i) with prolonged immobilization	D	
(ii) without prolonged immobilization	A	
f) Minor surgery without immobilization	A	

Sterilization does not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY **A** = accept **C** = caution **D** = delay **S** = special	CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
KNOWN THROMBOGENIC MUTATIONS (e.g., factor V Leiden; prothrombin mutation; protein S, protein C, and antithrombin deficiencies)	A	**Clarification**: Routine screening is not appropriate because of the rarity of the conditions and the high cost of screening.
SUPERFICIAL VENOUS THROMBOSIS		
a) Varicose veins	A	
b) Superficial thrombophlebitis	A	
CURRENT AND HISTORY OF ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE*		
a) Current ischaemic heart disease	D	
b) History of ischaemic heart disease	C	
STROKE (history of cerebrovascular accident)	C	
KNOWN HYPERLIPIDAEMIAS	A	**Clarification**: Routine screening is not appropriate because of the rarity of the conditions and the high cost of screening.
VALVULAR HEART DISEASE		
a) Uncomplicated	C	**Clarification**: The woman requires prophylactic antibiotics.
b) Complicated (pulmonary hypertension, risk of atrial fibrillation, history of subacute bacterial endocarditis)	S	**Clarification**: The woman is at high risk for complications associated with anaesthesia and surgery. If the woman has atrial fibrillation that has not been successfully managed or current subacute bacterial endocarditis, the procedure should be delayed.
RHEUMATIC DISEASES		
SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS (SLE) People with SLE are at increased risk of ischaemic heart disease, stroke and venous thromboembolism. Categories assigned to such conditions in the MEC should be the same for women with SLE who present with these conditions. For all categories of SLE, classifications are based on the assumption that no other risk factors for cardiovascular disease are present; these classifications must be modified in the presence of such risk factors. Available evidence indicates that many women with SLE can be considered good candidates for most contraceptive methods, including hormonal contraceptives.(112-130)		
a) Positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies	S	
b) Severe thrombocytopenia	S	
c) Immunosuppressive treatment	S	
d) None of the above	C	
NEUROLOGIC CONDITIONS		
HEADACHES		
a) Non-migrainous (mild or severe)	A	
b) Migraine		
(i) without aura		
Age < 35 years	A	
Age ≥ 35 years	A	
(ii) with aura, at any age	A	
EPILEPSY	C	

Sterilization does not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY **A** = accept **C** = caution **D** = delay **S** = special	CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS		
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS	C	
REPRODUCTIVE TRACT INFECTIONS AND DISORDERS		
VAGINAL BLEEDING PATTERNS		
a) Irregular pattern without heavy bleeding	A	
b) Heavy or prolonged bleeding (includes regular and irregular patterns)	A	
UNEXPLAINED VAGINAL BLEEDING (suspicious for serious condition)		**Clarification**: The condition must be evaluated before the procedure is performed
Before evaluation	D	
ENDOMETRIOSIS	S	
BENIGN OVARIAN TUMOURS (including cysts)	A	
SEVERE DYSMENORRHOEA	A	
GESTATIONAL TROPHOBLASTIC DISEASE		
a) Decreasing or undetectable β-hCG levels	A	
b) Persistently elevated β-hCG levels or malignant disease	D	
CERVICAL ECTROPION	A	
CERVICAL INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA (CIN)	A	
CERVICAL CANCER* (awaiting treatment)	D	
BREAST DISEASE		
a) Undiagnosed mass	A	
b) Benign breast disease	A	
c) Family history of cancer	A	
d) Breast cancer		
(i) current	C	
(ii) past and no evidence of current disease for 5 years	A	
ENDOMETRIAL CANCER*	D	
OVARIAN CANCER*	D	
UTERINE FIBROIDS*		
a) Without distortion of the uterine cavity	C	
b) With distortion of the uterine cavity	C	

Sterilization does not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY **A** = accept **C** = caution **D** = delay **S** = special	CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)*		
a) Past PID (assuming no current risk factors for STIs)		**Clarification**: A careful pelvic examination must be performed to rule out recurrent or persistent infection and to determine the mobility of the uterus.
(i) with subsequent pregnancy	A	
(ii) without subsequent pregnancy	C	
b) PID - current	D	
STIs*		
a) Current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonorrhoea	D	**Clarification**: If no symptoms persist following treatment, sterilization may be performed.
b) Other STIs (excluding HIV and hepatitis)	A	
c) Vaginitis (including trichomonas vaginalis and bacterial vaginosis)	A	
d) Increased risk of STIs	A	
HIV/AIDS		
HIGH RISK OF HIV	A	**Clarification**: No routine screening is needed. Appropriate infection prevention procedures, including universal precautions, must be carefully observed with all surgical procedures. The use of condoms is recommended following sterilization.
HIV-INFECTED	A	**Clarification**: No routine screening is needed. Appropriate infection prevention procedures, including universal precautions, must be carefully observed with all surgical procedures. The use of condoms is recommended following sterilization.
AIDS	S	**Clarification**: The presence of an AIDS-related illness may require that the procedure be delayed.
OTHER INFECTIONS		
SCHISTOSOMIASIS		
a) Uncomplicated	A	
b) Fibrosis of the liver (if severe, see cirrhosis)	C	**Clarification**: Liver function may need to be evaluated.
TUBERCULOSIS		
a) Non-pelvic	A	
b) Pelvic	S	
MALARIA	A	

Sterilization does not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY **A** = accept **C** = caution **D** = delay **S** = special	CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
ENDOCRINE CONDITIONS		
DIABETES*		**Clarification:** If blood glucose is not well controlled, referral to a higher-level facility is recommended.
a) History of gestational disease	A	
b) Non-vascular disease		**Clarification:** There is a possible decrease in healing and an increased risk of wound infection. Use of prophylactic antibiotics is recommended.
(i) non-insulin dependent	C	
(ii) insulin dependent	C	**Evidence**: Diabetic women were more likely to have complications when undergoing sterilization.(22)
c) Nephropathy/retinopathy/ neuropathy	S	
d) Other vascular disease or diabetes of > 20 years' duration	S	
THYROID DISORDERS*		
a) Simple goitre	A	
b) Hyperthyroid	S	
c) Hypothyroid	C	
GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS		
GALL BLADDER DISEASE		
a) Symptomatic		
(i) treated by cholecystectomy	A	
(ii) medically treated	A	
(iii) current	D	
b) Asymptomatic	A	
HISTORY OF CHOLESTASIS		
a) Pregnancy related	A	
b) Past-COC related	A	
VIRAL HEPATITIS*		**Clarification:** Appropriate infection-prevention procedures, including universal precautions, must be carefully observed with all surgical procedures.
a) Acute or flare	D	
b) Carrier	A	
c) Chronic	A	
CIRRHOSIS		**Clarification:** Liver function and clotting might be altered. Liver function should be evaluated.
a) Mild (compensated)	A	
b) Severe (decompensated)	S	
LIVER TUMOURS		**Clarification:** Liver function and clotting might be altered. Liver function should be evaluated.
a) Benign		
(i) Focal nodular hyperplasia	A	
(ii) Hepatocellular adenoma	C	
b) Malignant (hepatoma)	C	

Sterilization does not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY **A** = accept **C** = caution **D** = delay **S** = special	CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
ANAEMIAS		
THALASSAEMIA	C	
SICKLE CELL DISEASE*	C	
IRON-DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA		**Clarification**: The underlying disease should be identified. Both preoperative haemoglobin (Hb) level and operative blood loss are important factors in women with anaemia. If peripheral perfusion is inadequate, this may decrease wound healing.
a) Hb < 7g/dl	D	
a) Hb ≥ 7 to < 10g/dl	C	
OTHER CONDITIONS RELEVANT ONLY FOR FEMALE SURGICAL STERILIZATION		
LOCAL INFECTION	D	**Clarification**: There is an increased risk of postoperative infection.
COAGULATION DISORDERS*	S	
RESPIRATORY DISEASES		**Clarification**: The procedure should be delayed until the condition is corrected. There are increases in anaesthesia-related and other perioperative risks.
a) Acute (bronchitis, pneumonia)	D	
b) Chronic		
(i) asthma	S	
(ii) bronchitis	S	
(iii) emphysema	S	
(iv) lung infection	S	
SYSTEMIC INFECTION OR GASTROENTERITIS*	D	
FIXED UTERUS DUE TO PREVIOUS SURGERY OR INFECTION*	S	
ABDOMINAL WALL OR UMBILICAL HERNIA	S	**Clarification**: Hernia repair and tubal sterilization should be performed concurrently if possible.
DIAPHRAGMATIC HERNIA*	C	
KIDNEY DISEASE*	C	
SEVERE NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCIES*	C	
PREVIOUS ABDOMINAL OR PELVIC SURGERY	C	**Evidence**: Women with previous abdominal or pelvic surgery were more likely to have complications when undergoing sterilization. (21;22;24-26)
STERILIZATION CONCURRENT WITH ABDOMINAL SURGERY		
a) Elective	C	
b) Emergency (without previous counselling)	D	
c) Infectious condition	D	
STERILIZATION CONCURRENT WITH CAESAREAN SECTION*	A	

MALE SURGICAL STERILIZATION

Sterilization does not protect against STI/HIV. If there is risk of STI/HIV (including during pregnancy or postpartum), the correct and consistent use of condoms is recommended, either alone or with another contraceptive method. Male latex condoms are proven to protect against STI/HIV.

CONDITION * additional comments at end of table	CATEGORY **A** = accept **C** = caution **D** = delay **S** = special	CLARIFICATIONS/EVIDENCE
PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS AND REPRODUCTIVE HISTORY		
YOUNG AGE	C	**Clarification**: Young men, like all men, should be counselled about the permanency of sterilization and the availability of alternative, long-term, highly effective methods. **Evidence**: Men who underwent vasectomy at young ages were more likely to have the procedure reversed than those who underwent vasectomy at older ages.(18)
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS		
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS	C	
HIV/AIDS		
HIGH RISK OF HIV	A	**Clarification**: No routine screening is needed. Appropriate infection-prevention procedures, including universal precautions, must be carefully observed with all surgical procedures. The use of condoms is recommended following sterilization.
HIV-INFECTED	A	**Clarification**: No routine screening is needed. Appropriate infection-prevention procedures, including universal precautions, must be carefully observed with all surgical procedures. The use of condoms is recommended following sterilization.
AIDS On ARV therapy	S	**Clarification**: The presence of an AIDS-related illness may require that the procedure be delayed.
ENDOCRINE CONDITIONS		
DIABETES*	C	**Clarification:** If blood glucose is not well controlled, referral to a higher-level facility is recommended.
ANAEMIAS		
SICKLE CELL DISEASE	A	
OTHER CONDITIONS RELEVANT ONLY FOR MALE SURGICAL STERILIZATION		
LOCAL INFECTION*		
a) Scrotal skin infection	D	
b) Active STI	D	
c) Balanitis	D	
d) Epididymitis or orchitis	D	
COAGULATION DISORDERS*	S	
PREVIOUS SCROTAL INJURY	C	
SYSTEMIC INFECTION OR GASTROENTERITIS*	D	
LARGE VARICOCELE*	C	
LARGE HYDROCELE*	C	
FILIARIASIS; ELEPHANTIASIS*	D	
INTRASCROTAL MASS*	D	
CRYPTORCHIDISM	C	
INGUINAL HERNIA*	S	

ADDITIONAL COMMENTS FOR FEMALE STERILIZATION

PARITY

Nulliparous: nulliparous women, like all women, should be counselled about the permanency of sterilization and the availability of alternative, long-term, highly effective methods.

POSTPARTUM

< 7 days postpartum: sterilization can be safely performed immediately postpartum.

7 to < 42 days: there is an increased risk of complications when the uterus has not fully involuted.

Pre-eclampsia/eclampsia: there are increased anaesthesia-related risks.

Prolonged rupture of membranes, 24 hours or more: there is an increased risk of postoperative infection.

Puerperal sepsis, intrapartum or puerperal fever: there is an increased risk of postoperative infection.

Severe antepartum or postpartum haemorrhage: the woman may be anaemic and unable to tolerate further blood loss.

Severe trauma to the genital tract (cervical or vaginal tear at the time of delivery): there may have been significant blood loss and anaemia.

Uterine rupture or perforation: there may have been significant blood loss or damage to abdominal contents.

POST-ABORTION

Post-abortal sepsis or fever: there is an increased risk of postoperative infection.

Severe post-abortal haemorrhage: the woman may be anaemic and unable to tolerate further blood loss.

Severe trauma to the genital tract (cervical or vaginal tear at the time of abortion): the woman may be anaemic and unable to tolerate further blood loss. The procedure may be more painful.

Uterine perforation: there may have been significant blood loss or damage to abdominal contents.

Acute haematometra: the woman may be anaemic and unable to tolerate further blood loss.

MULTIPLE RISK FACTORS FOR ARTERIAL CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE

When multiple risk factors are present concurrently, the woman may be at high risk for complications associated with anaesthesia and surgery.

CURRENT AND HISTORY OF ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE:

The woman is at high risk for complications associated with anaesthesia and surgery.

CERVICAL CANCER (AWAITING TREATMENT)

In general, the treatment renders a woman sterile.

ENDOMETRIAL CANCER

In general, the treatment renders a woman sterile.

OVARIAN CANCER

In general, the treatment renders a woman sterile.

UTERINE FIBROIDS

Depending on the size and location of the fibroids, it might be difficult to localize the tubes and mobilize the uterus.

PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)

PID can lead to an increased risk of post-sterilization infection or adhesions.

STIS

There is an increased risk of postoperative infection.

DIABETES

There is a risk of hypoglycaemia or ketoacidosis when the procedure is performed, particularly if blood sugar is not well controlled before the procedure.

THYROID DISORDERS

The woman is at higher risk for complications associated with anaesthesia and surgery.

VIRAL HEPATITIS

The woman is at high risk for complications associated with anaesthesia and surgery.

SICKLE-CELL DISEASE

There is an increased risk of pulmonary, cardiac or neurologic complications and possible increased risk of wound infection.

COAGULATION DISORDERS

Women with coagulation disorders are at increased risk of haematologic complications of surgery.

SYSTEMIC INFECTION OR GASTROENTERITIS

There are increased risks of postoperative infection, complications from dehydration, and anaesthesia-related complications.

FIXED UTERUS DUE TO PREVIOUS SURGERY OR INFECTION

Decreased mobility of the uterus, fallopian tubes and bowel may make laparoscopy and minilaparotomy difficult and increase the risk of complications.

DIAPHRAGMATIC HERNIA

For laparoscopy, the woman may experience acute cardiorespiratory complications induced by pneumoperitoneum or the Trendelenburg position.

KIDNEY DISEASE
Blood clotting may be impaired. There may be an increased risk of infection and hypovolemic shock. Condition may cause baseline anaemia, electrolyte disturbances, and abnormalities in drug metabolism and excretion.

SEVERE NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCIES
There may be an increased risk of wound infection and impaired healing.

STERILIZATION CONCURRENT WITH CAESAREAN SECTION
Concurrent sterilization dose not increase the risk of complications in a surgically stable client.

ADDITIONAL COMMENTS FOR MALE STERILIZATION

DIABETES
Individuals with diabetes are more likely to get postoperative wound infections. If signs of infection appear, treatment with antibiotics needs to be given.

LOCAL INFECTION
There is an increased risk of postoperative infection.

COAGULATION DISORDERS
Bleeding disorders lead to an increased risk of postoperative haematoma formation which, in turn, leads to an increased risk of infection.

SYSTEMIC INFECTION OR GASTROENTERITIS:
There is an increased risk of postoperative infection.

LARGE VARICOCELE
The vas may be difficult or impossible to locate; a single procedure to repair varicocele and perform a vasectomy decreases the risk of complications.

LARGE HYDROCELE
The vas may be difficult or impossible to locate; a single procedure to repair hydrocele and perform a vasectomy decreases the risk of complications.

FILARIASIS; ELEPHANTIASIS
If elephantiasis involves the scrotum, it may be impossible to palpate the spermatic cord and testis.

INTRASCROTAL MASS
This may indicate underlying disease.

INGUINAL HERNIA
Vasectomy can be performed concurrent with hernia repair.

REFERENCE LIST

(1) Abraham S, et al. The characteristics, perceptions and personalities of women seeking a reversal of their tubal sterilization. *Medical Journal of Australia* 1986; 145:4-7.

(2) Allyn DP, et al. Presterilization counseling and women's regret about having been sterilized. *Journal of Reproductive Medicine* 1986; 31:1027-1032.

(3) Boring CC, Rochat RW, Becerra J. Sterilization regret among Puerto Rican women. *Fertility & Sterility* 1988; 44:973-981.

(4) Clarkson SE, Gillett WR. Psychological aspects of female sterilisation -- assessment of subsequent regret. *New Zealand Medical Journal* 1985; 98:748-750.

(5) Grubb GS, et al. Regreat after decision to have a tubal sterilization. *Fertility & Sterility* 1985; 44:248-253.

(6) Hardy E, et al. Risk factors for tubal sterilization regret, detectable before surgery. *Contraception* 1996; 54:159-162.

(7) Henshaw SK, Singh S. Sterilization regret among U.S. couples. *Family Planning Perspectives* 1986; 18:238-240.

(8) Hillis SD, et al. Poststerilization regret: findings from the United States Collaborative Review of Sterilization. *Obstetrics & Gynecology* 1999; 93:889-895.

(9) Jamieson DJ, et al. A comparison of women's regret after vasectomy versus tubal sterilization. *Obstetrics & Gynecology* 2002; 99:1073-1079.

(10) Kariminia A, Saunders DM, Chamberlain M. Risk factors for strong regret and subsequent IVF request after having tubal ligation. *Australian & New Zealand Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology* 2002; 42:526-529.

(11) Leader A, et al. A comparison of definable traits in women requesting reversal of sterilization and women satisfied with sterilization. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology* 1983; 145:198-202.

(12) Loaiza E. Sterilization regret in the Dominican Republic: looking for quality-of-care issues. *Studies in Family Planning* 1995; 26:39-48.

(13) Marcil-Gratton N. Sterilization regret among women in metropolitan Montreal. *Family Planning Perspectives* 1988; 20:222-227.

(14) Platz-Christensen JJ, et al. Evaluation of regret after tubal sterilization. *International Journal of Gynaecology & Obstetrics* 1992; 38:223-226.

(15) Ramsay IN, Russell SA. Who requests reversal of female sterilisation? A retrospective study from a Scottish unit. *Scottish Medical Journal* 1991; 36:44-46.

(16) Schmidt JE, et al. Requesting information about and obtaining reversal after tubal sterilization: findings from the U.S. Collaborative Review of Sterilization. *Fertility & Sterility* 2000; 74:892-898.

(17) Thranov I, et al. Regret among 547 Danish sterilized women. *Scandinavian Journal of Social Medicine* 1988; 16:41-48.

(18) Trussell J, Guilbert E, Hedley A. Sterilization failure, sterilization reversal, and pregnancy after sterilization reversal in Quebec. *Obstetrics & Gynecology* 2003; 101:677-684.

(19) Wilcox LS, et al. Risk factors for regret after tubal sterilization: 5 years of follow-up in a prospective study. *Fertility & Sterility* 1991; 55:927-933.

(20) Chi I, Mumford SD, Laufe LE. Technical failures in tubal ring sterilization: incidence, perceived reasons, outcome, and risk factors. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology* 1980; 138:307-312.

(21) Chi I, Kennedy KI. Early readmission following elective laparoscopic sterilization: a brief analysis of a rare event. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology* 1984; 148:322-327.

(22) Jamieson DJ, et al. Complications of interval laparoscopic tubal sterilization: findings from the United States Collaborative Review of Sterilization. *Obstetrics & Gynecology* 2000; 96:997-1002.

(23) White MK, Ory HW, Goldenberg LA. A case-control study of uterine perforations documented at laparoscopy. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology* 1977; 129:623-625.

(24) Baggish MS, et al. Complications of laparoscopic sterlization. Comparison of 2 methods. *Obstetrics & Gynecology* 1979; 54:54-59.

(25) Chi I, Feldblum PJ, Balogh SA. Previous abdominal surgery as a risk factor in interval laparoscopic sterilization. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology* 1983;(841):846.

(26) Feldblum PJ, et al. Technical failures in female sterilization using the tubal ring: a case-control analysis. *Contraception* 1986; 34:505-512.

CONDITION	COC	CIC	P/R	POP	DMPA NET-EN	LNG/ ETG Implants	Cu-IUD	LNG-IUD
I = initiation, C = continuation, BF = breastfeeding, NA = not applicable								
PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS AND REPRODUCTIVE HISTORY								
PREGNANCY	NA†	NA†	NA†	NA†	NA†	NA†	4†	4†
AGE	Menarche to <40=1 ≥40=2	Menarche to <40=1 ≥40=2		Menarche to <18=1 18-45=1 >45=1	Menarche to <18=2 18-45=1 >45=2	Menarche to <18=1 18-45=1 >45=1	Menarche to <20=2 ≥20=1	Menarche to <20=2 ≥20=1
PARITY								
a) Nulliparous	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2
b) Parous	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
BREASTFEEDING								
a) < 6 weeks postpartum	4	4	4	3†	3†	3†		
b) 6 weeks to < 6 months (primarily breastfeeding)	3	3	3	1	1	1		
c) ≥ 6 months postpartum	2	2	2	1	1	1		
POSTPARTUM (non-breastfeeding women)								
a) < 21 days				1	1	1		
(i) without other risk factors for VTE	3†	3†	3†					
(ii) with other risk factors for VTE	3/4†	3/4†	3/4†					
b) ≥ 21 days				1	1	1		
(i) without other risk factors for VTE	2†	2†	2†					
(ii) with other risk factors for VTE	2/3†	2/3†	2/3†					
c) > 42 days	1	1	1	1	1	1		
POSTPARTUM (breastfeeding or non-breastfeeding women, including after caesarean section)								
a) < 48 hours including insertion immediately after delivery of the placenta							1	1=not BF 3=BF
b) ≥ 48 hours to <4 weeks							3	3
c) ≥ 4 weeks							1	1
d) Puerperal sepsis							4	4
POST-ABORTION								
a) First trimester	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†
b) Second trimester	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2
c) Immediate post-septic abortion	1	1	1	1	1	1	4	4
PAST ECTOPIC PREGNANCY	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1

† Please consult the tables in the text for a clarification to this classification

CONDITION	COC	CIC	P/R	POP	DMPA NET-EN	LNG/ ETG Implants	Cu-IUD	LNG-IUD
I = initiation, C = continuation, BF = breastfeeding, NA = not applicable								
HISTORY OF PELVIC SURGERY (see postpartum, including caesarean section)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
SMOKING								
a) Age < 35 years	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1
b) Age ≥ 35 years								
(i) <15 cigarettes/day	3	2	3	1	1	1	1	1
(ii) ≥15 cigarettes/day	4	3	4	1	1	1	1	1
OBESITY	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1
a) ≥ 30 kg/m^2 BMI								
b) Menarche to < 18 years and ≥ 30 kg/m^2 BMI	2	2	2	1	DMPA=2 NET-EN=1†	1	1	1
BLOOD PRESSURE MEASUREMENT UNAVAILABLE	NA†	NA†	NA†	NA†	NA†	NA†	NA†	NA†
CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE								
MULTIPLE RISK FACTORS FOR ARTERIAL CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE (such as older age, smoking, diabetes and hypertension)	3/4†	3/4†	3/4†	2†	3†	2†	1	2
HYPERTENSION								
a) History of hypertension where blood pressure CANNOT be evaluated (including hypertension during pregnancy)	3†	3†	3†	2†	2†	2†	1	2
b) Adequately controlled hypertension, where blood pressure CAN be evaluated	3†	3†	3†	1†	2†	1†	1	1
c) Elevated blood pressure levels (properly taken measurements)								
(i) systolic 140-159 or diastolic 90-99 mm Hg	3	3	3	1	2	1	1	1
(ii) systolic ≥160 or diastolic ≥100 mm Hg	4	4	4	2	3	2	1	2
d) Vascular disease	4	4	4	2	3	2	1	2
HISTORY OF HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE DURING PREGNANCY (where current blood pressure is measurable and normal)	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1

† Please consult the tables in the text for a clarification to this classification

CONDITION	COC	CIC	P/R	POP	DMPA NET-EN	LNG/ ETG Implants	Cu-IUD	LNG-IUD
I = initiation, C = continuation, BF = breastfeeding, NA = not applicable								
DEEP VENOUS THROMBOSIS (DVT)/PULMONARY EMBOLISM (PE)								
a) History of DVT/PE	4	4	4	2	2	2	1	2
b) Acute DVT/PE	4	4	4	3	3	3	1	3
c) DVT/PE and established on anticoagulant therapy	4	4	4	2	2	2	1	2
d) Family history (first-degree relatives)	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1
e) Major surgery								
(i) with prolonged immobilization	4	4	4	2	2	2	1	2
(ii) without prolonged immobilization	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1
f) Minor surgery without immobilization	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
KNOWN THROMBOGENIC MUTATIONS (e.g. factor V Leiden; prothrombin mutation; protein S, protein C and antithrombin deficiencies)	4†	4†	4†	2†	2†	2†	1†	2†
SUPERFICIAL VENOUS THROMBOSIS								
a) Varicose veins	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
b) Superficial thrombophlebitis	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1
CURRENT AND HISTORY OF ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE	4	4	4	I: 2 / C: 3	3	I: 2 / C: 3	1	I: 2 / C: 3
STROKE (history of cerebrovascular accident)	4	4	4	I: 2 / C: 3	3	I: 2 / C: 3	1	2
KNOWN HYPERLIPIDAEMIAS	2/3†	2/3†	2/3†	2†	2†	2†	1†	2†
VALVULAR HEART DISEASE								
a) Uncomplicated	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1
b) Complicated (pulmonary hypertension, risk of atrial fibrillation, history of subacute bacterial endocarditis)	4	4	4	1	1	1	2†	2†
RHEUMATIC DISEASES								
SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS					I / C		I / C	
a) Positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies	4	4	4	3	3 / 3	3	1 / 1	3
b) Severe thrombocytopenia	2	2	2	2	3 / 2	2	3† / 2†	2†
c) Immunosuppressive treatment	2	2	2	2	2 / 2	2	2 / 1	2
d) None of the above	2	2	2	2	2 / 2	2	1 / 1	2

† Please consult the tables in the text for a clarification to this classification

CONDITION	COC		CIC		P/R		POP		DMPA NET-EN		LNG/ ETG Implants		Cu-IUD		LNG-IUD	
I = initiation, C = continuation, BF = breastfeeding, NA = not applicable																
NEUROLOGIC CONDITIONS																
HEADACHES	I	C	I	C	I	C	I	C	I	C	I	C			I	C
a) Non-migrainous (mild or severe)	1†	2†	1†	2†	1†	2†	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†		1†	1†
b) Migraine																
(i) without aura																
Age < 35 years	2†	3†	2†	3†	2†	3†	1†	2†	2†	2†	2†	2†	1†		2†	2†
Age ≥ 35 years	3†	4†	3†	4†	3†	4†	1†	2†	2†	2†	2†	2†	1†		2†	2†
(ii) with aura (at any age)	4†	4†	4†	4†	4†	4†	2†	3†	2†	3†	2†	3†	1†		2†	3†
EPILEPSY	1†		1†		1†		1†		1†		1†		1		1	
If on treatment, see DRUG INTERACTIONS section																
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS																
DEPRESSIVE DISORDERS	1†		1†		1†		1†		1†		1†		1†		1†	
REPRODUCTIVE TRACT INFECTIONS AND DISORDERS																
VAGINAL BLEEDING PATTERNS															I	C
a) Irregular pattern without heavy bleeding	1		1		1		2		2		2		1		1	1
b) Heavy or prolonged bleeding (includes regular and irregular patterns)	1†		1†		1†		2†		2†		2†		2†		1†	2†
UNEXPLAINED VAGINAL BLEEDING (suspicious for serious condition)													I	C	I	C
Before evaluation	2†		2†		2†		2†		3†		3†		4†	2†	4†	2†
ENDOMETRIOSIS	1		1		1		1		1		1		2		1	
BENIGN OVARIAN TUMOURS (including cysts)	1		1		1		1		1		1		1		1	
SEVERE DYSMENORRHOEA	1		1		1		1		1		1		2		1	
GESTATIONAL TROPHOBLASTIC DISEASE																
a) Decreasing or undetectable β-hCG levels	1		1		1		1		1		1		3		3	
b) Persistently elevated β-hCG levels or malignant disease	1		1		1		1		1		1		4		4	
CERVICAL ECTROPION	1		1		1		1		1		1		1		1	
CERVICAL INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA (CIN)	2		2		2		1		2		2		1		2	
CERVICAL CANCER (awaiting treatment)													I	C	I	C
	2		2		2		1		2		2		4	2	4	2

† Please consult the tables in the text for a clarification to this classification

CONDITION	COC	CIC	P/R	POP	DMPA NET-EN	LNG/ ETG Implants	Cu-IUD		LNG-IUD	
I = initiation, C = continuation, BF = breastfeeding, NA = not applicable										
BREAST DISEASE										
a) Undiagnosed mass	2†	2†	2†	2†	2†	2†	1		2	
b) Benign breast disease	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
c) Family history of cancer	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
d) Breast cancer										
(i) current	4	4	4	4	4	4	1		4	
(ii) past and no evidence of current disease for 5 years	3	3	3	3	3	3	1		3	
ENDOMETRIAL CANCER							I	C	I	C
	1	1	1	1	1	1	4	2	4	2
OVARIAN CANCER							I	C	I	C
	1	1	1	1	1	1	3	2	3	2
UTERINE FIBROIDS										
a) Without distortion of the uterine cavity	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
b) With distortion of the uterine cavity	1	1	1	1	1	1	4		4	
ANATOMICAL ABNORMALITIES										
a) That distort the uterine cavity							4		4	
b) That do not distort the uterine cavity							2		2	
PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)										
a) Past PID (assuming no current risk factors of STIs)							I	C	I	C
(i) with subsequent pregnancy	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
ii) without subsequent pregnancy	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2
b) PID – current	1	1	1	1	1	1	4	2†	4	2†
STIs							I	C	I	C
a) Current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonorrhoea	1	1	1	1	1	1	4	2†	4	2†
b) Other STIs (excluding HIV and hepatitis)	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2
c) Vaginitis (including trichomonas vaginalis and bacterial vaginosis)	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2
d) Increased risk of STIs	1	1	1	1	1	1	2/3†	2	2/3†	2

† Please consult the tables in the text for a clarification to this classification

CONDITION	COC	CIC	P/R	POP	DMPA NET-EN	LNG/ ETG Implants	Cu-IUD		LNG-IUD	
I = initiation, C = continuation, BF = breastfeeding, NA = not applicable										
HIV/AIDS										
							I	C	I	C
HIGH RISK OF HIV	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2
HIV-INFECTED	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2
AIDS	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†	3	2†	3	2†
Clinically well on ARV therapy	If on treatment, see DRUG INTERACTIONS section						2	2	2	2
OTHER INFECTIONS										
SCHISTOSOMIASIS										
a) Uncomplicated	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
b) Fibrosis of the liver	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
TUBERCULOSIS							I	C	I	C
a) Non-pelvic	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†	1†	1	1	1	1
b) Known pelvic	1†	1†	1†	1	1	1	4	3	4	3
	If on treatment, see DRUG INTERACTIONS section									
MALARIA	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
ENDOCRINE CONDITIONS										
DIABETES										
a) History of gestational disease	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
b) Non-vascular disease										
(i) non-insulin dependent	2	2	2	2	2	2	1		2	
(ii) insulin dependent	2	2	2	2	2	2	1		2	
c) Nephropathy/ retinopathy/ neuropathy	3/4†	3/4†	3/4†	2	3	2	1		2	
d) Other vascular disease or diabetes of > 20 years' duration	3/4†	3/4†	3/4†	2	3	2	1		2	
THYROID DISORDERS										
a) Simple goitre	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
b) Hyperthyroid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
c) Hypothyroid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS										
GALL BLADDER DISEASE										
a) Symptomatic										
(i) treated by cholecystectomy	2	2	2	2	2	2	1		2	
(ii) medically treated	3	2	3	2	2	2	1		2	
(iii) current	3	2	3	2	2	2	1		2	
b) Asymptomatic	2	2	2	2	2	2	1		2	
HISTORY OF CHOLESTASIS										
a) Pregnancy related	2	2	2	1	1	1	1		1	
b) Past-COC related	3	2	3	2	2	2	1		2	
VIRAL HEPATITIS	I C	I C	I C							
a) Acute or flare	3/4† 2	3 2	3/4† 2	1	1	1	1		1	
b) Carrier	1 1	1 1	1 1	1	1	1	1		1	
c) Chronic	1 1	1 1	1 1	1	1	1	1		1	

† Please consult the tables in the text for a clarification to this classification

CONDITION	COC	CIC	P/R	POP	DMPA NET-EN	LNG/ ETG Implants	Cu-IUD		LNG-IUD	
I = initiation, C = continuation, BF = breastfeeding, NA = not applicable										
CIRRHOSIS										
a) Mild (compensated)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
b) Severe (decompensated)	4	3	4	3	3	3	1		3	
LIVER TUMOURS										
a) Benign										
(i) Focal nodular hyperplasia	2	2	2	2	2	2	1		2	
(ii) Hepatocellular adenoma	4	3	4	3	3	3	1		3	
b) Malignant (hepatoma)	4	3/4	4	3	3	3	1		3	
ANAEMIAS										
THALASSAEMIA	1	1	1	1	1	1	2		1	
SICKLE CELL DISEASE	2	2	2	1	1	1	2		1	
IRON-DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA	1	1	1	1	1	1	2		1	
DRUG INTERACTIONS										
ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY (SEE ANNEX 1)							I	C	I	C
a) Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs)	1†	1	1	1	DMPA=1 NET-EN=1	1	2/3†	2†	2/3†	2†
b) Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs)	2†	2†	2†	2†	DMPA=1 NET-EN=2†	2†	2/3†	2†	2/3†	2†
c) Ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors	3†	3†	3†	3†	DMPA=1 NET-EN=2†	2†	2/3†	2†	2/3†	2†
ANTICONVULSANT THERAPY										
a) Certain anticonvulsants (phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine)	3†	2	3†	3†	DMPA=1 NET-EN=2†	2†	1		1	
b) Lamotrigine	3†	3	3	1	1	1	1		1	
ANTIMICROBIAL THERAPY										
a) Broad-spectrum antibiotics	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
b) Antifungals	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
c) Antiparasitics	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	
d) Rifampicin or rifabutin therapy	3†	2†	3†	3†	DMPA=1 NET-EN=2†	2†	1		1	

† Please consult the tables in the text for a clarification to this classification

ANNEX 1. HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES AND ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPIES

Limited data from small, mostly unpublished studies suggest that the pharmacokinetics of COCs may be altered by some antiretroviral (ARV) therapies. Few studies have measured clinical outcomes. However, large decreases in contraceptive steroid level in the blood are seen with ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitors. Decreases of this size have the potential to compromise contraceptive effectiveness. Some of the interactions between contraceptives and ARVs have also led to increased ARV toxicity. With regard to the smaller effects seen with non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs), the clinical significance is unknown, especially since studies have not examined steady-state levels of contraceptive hormones. To date, no clinically significant interactions have been reported between contraceptive hormones and nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs).

The following tables summarize the evidence available to date regarding drug interactions between ARV therapies and hormonal contraceptives. For up-to-date, detailed information on HIV drug interactions, we recommend consulting an external resource such as the HIV Drug Interactions website: www.hiv-druginteractions.org.

Table 1. COC-ARV drug interactions

ARV	CONTRACEPTIVE EFFECTS	ARV EFFECTS
NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS (NRTIs)		
Tenofovir disaproxil fumarate (TDF)	EE↔NGM↔(1)	Tenofovir↔(1)
Zidovudine (ZDV or AZT)		Zidovudine↔(2) No change in viral load or CD4+(2)
NON-NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS (NNRTIs)		
Efavirenz (EFV or EFZ)	EE↑(3), EE↔(4), NGM↓(4), LNG↓(4) Pregnancy rate 2.6/100 woman-years in one study where up to 80% used hormonal contraceptives (35% used COC)(5)	Efavirenz↔(3;4)
Etravirine	EE↔NET↔(6)	Etravirine ↑(6) Concurrent administration, generally safe and well tolerated(6)
Nevirapine (NVP)	EE↔NET↔(7)	Nevirapine↔(7)
PROTEASE INHIBITORS AND RITONAVIR-BOOSTED PROTEASE INHIBITORS		
Atazanavir/ritonavir (ATV/r)	EE↑NET↑(8)	
Darunavir/ritonavir (DRV/r)	EE↓NET↔(9)	Darunavir↔(9)
Fos-amprenavir/ ritonavir (FPV/r)	EE↓(10;11) NET↓(11)	Amprenavir ↔ ritonavir↑ Elevated liver transaminases(10)
Indinavir (IDV)†	EE↔NET↔(12)	
Lopinavir/ritonavir (LPV/r)	EE↓NET↔(13)	
Nelfinavir (NFV)	EE↓NET↔(14)	
Saquinavir (SQV)†		Saquinavir ↔(15;16)
Tipranavir/ritonavir (TPV/r)	EE↓(17)	↑ skin and musculoskeletal adverse events; possible drug hypersensitivity reaction(17)

Legend:

↔ no change or change ≤ 30%;

↑ increase > 30%;

↓ decrease > 30%

Abbreviations:

COC = combined oral contraceptive

EE = ethinylestradiol

LNG = levonorgestrel

NET = norethindrone

NGM = norgestimate

† Saquinavir and indinavir are commonly given boosted by ritonavir, but there are no data on contraceptive interactions with the boosted regimens.

Table 2. DMPA-ARV Drug interactions

ARV	CONTRACEPTIVE EFFECTS	ARV EFFECTS
NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS (NRTIS)		
Zidovudine (ZDV or AZT)		Zidovudine↔(2) No change in viral load
NON-NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS (NNRTIS)		
Efavirenz (EFV or EFZ)	MPA↔(18;19) No ovulations during three cycles(18;19) Pregnancy rate 2.6/100 woman-years in one study where up to 80% used hormonal contraceptives (65% used POIs)(5)	Efavirenz↔(18) No change in viral load or CD4+, no grade 3- or 4-related adverse events †(20)
Nevirapine (NVP)	MPA↔(18) No ovulations during three cycles(18)	Nevirapine ↑(18) No change in viral load or CD4+, no grade 3- or 4-related adverse events†(20)
PROTEASE INHIBITORS AND RITONAVIR-BOOSTED PROTEASE INHIBITORS		
Nelfinavir (NFV)	MPA↔(18)	Nelfinavir ↔(18) No change in viral load or CD4+, no grade 3- or 4-related adverse events†(20)

Legend:

↔ no change or change ≤ 30%;

↑ increase > 30%;

Abbreviations:

MPA = medroxyprogesterone acetate

POIs = progestogen-only injectables

† The trial applied the standardized National Institutes of Health Division of AIDS Table for Grading Severity of Adult and Pediatric Adverse Events, December 2004 (Clarification dated August 2009), http://rsc.tech-res.com/safetyandpharmacovigilance. Grade 3 events are classified as severe. Severe events are defined as symptoms that limit activity or may require some assistance; require medical intervention or therapy; and may require hospitalization. Grade 4 events are classified as life threatening. Life-threatening events include symptoms that result in extreme limitation of activity and require significant assistance; significant medical intervention and therapy are required; and hospitalization or hospice are probable.

REFERENCE LIST

1. Kearney BP , Isaacson E, Sayre J, Cheng AK. Tenofovir DF and oral contraceptives: Lack of a pharmacokinetic drug interaction. 43rd Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy. Abstract A-1618. September 14-17, 2003, Chicago, IL.
2. Aweeka FT, Rosenkranz SL, Segal Y et al. The impact of sex and contraceptive therapy on the plasma and intracellular pharmacokinetics of zidovudine. *AIDS* 2006; 20(14):1833-41.
3. Joshi AS, Fiske WD, Benedek IH, White SJ, Joseph JL, Kornhauser DM. Lack of a pharmacokinetic interaction between efavirenz (DMP 266) and ethinyl estradiol in healthy female volunteers. 5th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections. Abstract 348. 1-5 February, 1998, Chicago, IL.
4. Sevinsky H, Eley T, He B, et al. Effect of efavirenz on the pharmacokinetics of ethinyl estradiol and norgestimate in healthy female subjects. 48th Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy. Abstract A958. October 25-28, 2008, Washington, DC.
5. Danel C, Moh R, Anzian A et al. Tolerance and acceptability of an efavirenz-based regimen in 740 adults (predominantly women) in West Africa. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*: JAIDS 2006; 42(1):29-35.
6. Schöller-Gyüre M, Debroye C, Aharchi F, Woodfall B, Peeters MVK, Hoetelmans R. No clinically relevant effect of TMC125 on the pharmacokinetics of oral contraceptives. 8th International Congress on Drug Therapy in HIV infection November 12–16, 2006, Glasgow, UK.
7. Mildvan D, Yarrish R, Marshak A et al. Pharmacokinetic interaction between nevirapine and ethinyl estradiol/norethindrone when administered concurrently to HIV-infected women. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*: JAIDS 2002; 29(5):471-7.
8. Zhang J, Chung E, Eley T, et al. Effect of atazanavir/ritonavir on the pharmacokinetics of ethinyl estradiol and 17-deactylnorgestimate in healthy female subjects. 47th Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy. Abstract A-1415. September 17-20, 2007, Chicago, IL.
9. Sekar V, Lefebvre E, Spinosa-Guzman S et al. Pharmacokinetic interaction between ethinyl estradiol, norethindrone and TMC114, a new protease inhibitor. 46th Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy. Abstract A-368, September 27–30, 2006, San Francisco, CA.
10. GlaxoSmithKline. Prescription medicines. Lexiva (fosamprenavir calcium) (http://www.gsk.com/products/prescription_medicines/us/medicines-ko.htm, accessed on 17 April 2009).
11. GlaxoSmithKline. Study APV10020. A phase I, open label, two period, single-sequence, drug-drug interaction study comparing steady-state plasma ethinyl estradiol and norethisterone pharmacokinetics following administration of brevinor for 21 days with and without fosamprenavir 700 mg twice daily (BID) and ritonavir 100 mg BID for 21 days in healthy adult female subjects (http://www.gsk-clinicalstudyregister.com/files/pdf/23138.pdf, accessed on 17 April 2009).
12. Merck & Company. Indinavir patient prescribing information. (http://www.merck.com/product/usa/pi_circulars/c/crixivan/crixivan_ppi.pdf, accessed on 2 April 2009).
13. Abbot Laboratories. Lopinavir and ritonavir prescribing information, 2009. (http://rxabbott.com/pdf/kaletratabpi.pdf, accessed on 17 April 2009)
14. Agouron Pharmaceuticals. Viracept (Nelfinavir mesylate) prescribing information, 2008. (http://media.pfizer.com/files/products/uspi_viracept.pdf, accessed on 17 April 2009).
15. Mayer K, Poblete R, Hathaway B et al. Efficacy, effect of oral contraceptives, and adherence in HIV infected women receiving Fortovase (Saquinavir) soft gel capsule (SQV-SGC; FTV) thrice (TID) and twice (BID) daily regimens. Presented at the XIII International AIDS Conference, 2000, Durban, South Africa.
16. Frohlich M, Burhenne J, Martin-Facklam M et al. Oral contraception does not alter single dose saquinavir pharmacokinetics in women. *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology* 2004; 57(3):244-52.
17. United States Food and Drug Administration. Highlights of prescribing information. Aptivus (Tipranavir) Capsules, 250 mg. 2008 (http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2008/021814s005,022292lbl.pdf. (accessed on 4 June 2009).
18. Cohn SE, Park JG, Watts DH et al. Depo-medroxyprogesterone in women on antiretroviral therapy: effective contraception and lack of clinically significant interactions. *Clinical Pharmacology & Therapeutics* 2007; 81(2):222-7.
19. Nanda K, Amaral E, Hays M, Viscola MA, Mehta N, Bahamondes L. Pharmacokinetic interactions between depot medroxyprogesterone acetate and combination antiretroviral therapy. Pharmacokinetic interactions between depot medroxyprogesterone acetate and combination antiretroviral therapy. *Fertility & Sterility* 2008;90: 965-971
20. Watts DH, Park J-G, Cohn SE et al. Safety and tolerability of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate among HIV-infected women on antiretroviral therapy: ACTG A5093. *Contraception* 2008;77:84-90.

ANNEX 2. LIST OF PARTICIPANTS

Dr Hassan Baaqeel
King Khalid National Guard Hospital
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
PO Box 9515
Jeddah 21423
Saudi Arabia

Dr David Back
Department of Pharmacology and Therapeutics
Ashton Street Medical School, Ashton Street
Liverpool, Merseyside
Liverpool L69 3GE
United Kingdom

Dr Maria del Carmen Cravioto
Department of Reproductive Biology
National Institute of Nutrition, Salvador
Zubiran, Vaso de Quiroga 15
Delegacion Tlalpan
CP 14000 Mexico, DF
Mexico

Dr Willard Cates
Family Health International
PO Box 13950
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709
United States of America

Dr Tsungai Chipato
Department of OB/GYN
University of Zimbabwe
PO Box A 178
Harare
Zimbabwe

Dr Kathryn Curtis
Division of Reproductive Health
Koger Rhodes Building
CDC Mailstop K-34
4770 Buford Highway, NE
Atlanta, GA 30341-3717
United States of America

Dr Juan Diaz
R Maria Teresa Diaz da Silva 740
Cidade Universitaria
Caixa Postal 6019
13083-970 – Campinas
São Paulo
Brazil

Dr Soledad Diaz
Consultorio de Planification Familiar
Instituto Chileno de Medicina Reproductiva
José Victorino Latarria 29
Depto 101, Correo 22, Casilla 96
Santiago
Chile

Dr Mohammad Eslami
Family Health and Population Department
Ministry of Health and Medical Education
Yussef abad cross (Jomhuri eslami and Hafez cross)
Tehran
Iran

Dr El Hadj Oussenouye Faye
Ministry of Health
K 55 Hamo Grand Yoff
Dakar
Sénégal

Dr Karima Gholbzouri
Head of Family Planning Division
Directorate of Population
Ministry of Health
Rabat
Morocco

Dr Anna Glasier
Family Planning and Well Woman Services
18 Dean Terrace
Edinburgh EH4 1NL
United Kingdom

Dr Kerstin Hagenfeldt
Department of Woman and Child Health
Division of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Karolinska University Hospital
177 76 Stockholm
Sweden

Dr Phil Hannaford
Department of General Practice and Primary Care
University of Aberdeen
Foresterhill Health Centre
Westburn Road
Aberdeen AB25 2AY
United Kingdom

Professor Ezzeldin Othman Hassan
The National Egyptian Fertility Care Foundation
2(A) Mahrouky Street Mohandessen
PO Box 147 Orman
Giza
Egypt

Mr Maurice Hiza
Reproductive and Child Health Section
Ministry of Health and Social Welfare
PO Box 9083
Dar-es-Salaam
United Republic of Tanzania

Dr Douglas Huber
1175 Chestnut Street, Unit 6
Newton, MA 02464
United States of America

Dr Yolande Hyjazi
Université de Conakry
Faculté de Médecine
Pharmacie, Odonto - Stomatologie
BP 1017 Conakry
République de Guinée

Dr Roy Jacobstein
Engender Health
440 Ninth Ave.
New York, NY 1001
United States America

Dr Victoria Jennings
Institute for Reproductive Health
Georgetown University Medical Center
Georgetown Center, 6th Floor
2115 Wisconsin Ave., NW
Washington, DC 20007
United States of America

Dr Pamela Lynam
Regional Technical Director, East and Southern Africa
Jhpiego - Johns Hopkins University
PO Box 58247
Nairobi
Kenya

Dr Trent MacKay
Special Assistant for OB/GYN
Contraception and RH Branch
Center for Population Research
National Institute for Child Health and Human Development, National Institutes of Health
6100 Executive Blvd, Suite 8B13
Bethesda, MD 20892
United States of America

Dr Polly Marchbanks
Division of Reproductive Health
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
4770 Buford Highway, NE, MS K-34
Atlanta, GA 30341-3717
United States of America

Dr Olav Meirik
Instituto Chileno de Medicina Reproductiva
Jose Ramon Gutierres 295, Depto 3
Santiago
Chile

Dr Suneeta Mittal
Head Department of OB/GYN
Director-in-Charge, WHO CCR in Human Reproduction
All India Institute of Medical Sciences
Ansari Nagar
New Delhi, 110 029
India

Dr Kavita Nanda
Family Health International
PO Box 13950
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709
United States of America

Dr Nuriye Ortayli
Technical Advisor
Reproductive Health Branch
Technical Division
UNFPA
220 East 42nd Street
New York, NY 10017
United States of America

Ms Melissa Paulen
Division of Reproductive Health
Koger Rhodes Building
CDC Mailstop K-34
4770 Buford Highway, NE
Atlanta, GA 30341-3717
United States of America

Dr Herbert Peterson
Professor and Chair
Department of Maternal and Child Health
Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill
CB # 7445 Rosenau Hall
Chapel Hill, NC 27599-7445
United States of America

Dr Svetlana Posohova
Deputy Head of Odessa Oblast Clinical Hospital
47A Malinovskogo str. Room N 24
6507 Odessa
Ukraine

Professor Helen Rees
Executive Director
Reproductive Health and HIV Research Unit
Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology
University of the Witwatersrand
Hillbrow Health Precinct
Hugh Solomon Building
Esselen Street (Cnr Klein St), Hillbrow
PO Box 18512, Hillbrow 2038
Johannesburg
South Africa

Mr Ward Rinehart
John Hopkins University
Center for Communications Program
111 Market Place, Suite 310
Baltimore, MD 21202
United States of America

Dr Cynthia Rhoda Lee-Blackwell
Stockley's Drug Interactions
Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain
1 Lambeth High Street
London SE1 7JN
United Kingdom

Dr Roberto Rivera
Family Health International
PO Box 13950
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709
United States of America

Dr Annette Sachs Robertson
Advisor on Reproductive Health
Programme Assessment and Operations Research
Country Technical Services Team for the Pacific
United Nations Population Fund
Private Mail Bag
Suva
Fiji

Dr Wu Shangchun
National Research Institute for Family Planning
12 Da Hui Si (Hai Dian Qu)
Beijing 100081
People's Republic of China

Dr James Shelton
Science Advisor
Bureau for Global Health
USAID
1300 Pennsylvania Avenue, G/PHN
Washington, DC 20523
United States of America

Dr Connie Smith
Westminster PCT
Westside Contraceptive Services
Raymede Clinic
St Charles Hospital
Exmoor Street
London W10 6DZ
United Kingdom

Dr Bulbul Sood
Country Director
CEDPA/India
C-1, Hauz Khas,
New Delhi 110 016
India

Dr Tran Son Thach
Research, Training and International Collaboration
Hungvuong Hospital
128 Hungvuong, District 5
Ho Chi Minh City
Viet Nam

Dr Marcel Vekemans
Senior Medical Adviser
International Planned Parenthood Federation Central Office
4 Newhams Row
London, SE1 3UZ
United Kingdom

Dr Edith Weisberg
Sydney Centre for Reproductive Health Research
328-336 Liverpool Road
Ashfield, NSW 2131
Australia

Dr Ekaterina Yarotskaya
Head
International Department of the Scientific Center of Obstetrics and Perinatology
117 997 Oparin Street 4
Moscow
Russian Federation

WHO SECRETARIAT

Dr Catherine d'Arcangues, RHR
Dr Dalia Brahmi
Dr Kelly Culwell, RHR
Dr Mario Festin
Dr Mary Lyn Gaffield, RHR
Ms Jennie Greaney
Ms Catherine Hamill, RHR
Dr Emily Jackson, RHR
Ms Sarah Johnson, RHR
Dr Nathalie Kapp, RHR
Mrs Gloria Lamptey, RHR
Ms Sybil de Pietro
Dr Ian Tilley, RHR (Fellow)

PARTICIPANTS IN TECHNICAL CONSULTATION, 22 OCTOBER 2008

Dr Maria del Carmen Cravioto
Department of Reproductive Biology
National Institute of Nutrition Salvador Zubiran
Vaso de Quiroga 15
Delgacion Tlalpan
CP 14000 Mexico, DF
Mexico

Dr Kathryn Curtis
Division of Reproductive Health
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Koger Rhodes Building
CDC Mailstop K-34
4770 Buford Highway, NE
Atlanta, GA 30341-3717
United States of America

Dr Pierre Gressens
Directeur UMR 676 Inserm-Paris 7
Hôpital Robert Debré
48 Boulevard Serurier
75019 Paris
France

Dr Anna Glasier
Family Planning and Well Woman Services
18 Dean Terrace
Edinburgh EH4 1NL
United Kingdom

Dr Kerstin Hagenfeldt
Vendevag 23
18260 Djursholm
Sweden

Dr Betty Kalikstad
Department of Pediatrics
University of Oslo
Boks 1072 Blindern
NO-0316 Oslo
Norway

Dr Olav Meirik
Instituto Chileno de Medicina Reproductiva
Jose Ramon Gutierres 295, Depto 3
Santiago
Chile

Dr Kavita Nanda
Family Health International
PO Box 13950
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709
United States of America

Ms Melissa Paulen
Division of Reproductive Health
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Koger Rhodes Building
CDC Mailstop K-34
4770 Buford Highway, NE
Atlanta, GA 30341-3717
United States of America

Dr Herbert Peterson
Department of Maternal and Child Health
School of Public Health
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
School of Medicine
The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill
CB #7445
Chapel Hill, NC 27599-7445
United States of America

Dr Jaclyn Schwarz
Program in Neuroscience
University of Maryland School of Medicine
655 W. Baltimore Street
Baltimore, MD 21201
United States of America

Dr Christine Wagner
Department of Psychology
Center for Neuroscience Research
Social Science 369
University at Albany
Albany, NY 12222
United States of America

PARTICIPANTS IN TELECONFERENCE, 26 JANUARY 2010

Dr Jacqueline Conard
Unité Hémostase-Thrombose
Hôtel-Dieu
1 Place du Parvis Notre-Dame
75181 Paris cedex 04
France

Dr Maria del Carmen Cravioto
Department of Reproductive Biology
National Institute of Nutrition Salvador Zubiran
Vaso de Quiroga 15
Delgacion Tlalpan
CP 14000 Mexico, DF
Mexico

Dr Kathryn Curtis
Division of Reproductive Health
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
CDC Mailstop K-34
4770 Buford Highway, NE
Atlanta, GA 30341-3717
United States of America

Dr Anna Glasier
Family Planning and Well Woman Services
18 Dean Terrace
Edinburgh EH4 1NL
United Kingdom

Dr Ian Greer
Hull York Medical School
University of York
York YO105DD
United Kingdom

Dr Kerstin Hagenfeldt
Vendevag 23
18260 Djursholm
Sweden

Dr Phillip Hannaford
Department of General Practice and Primary Care
University of Aberdeen
Foresterhill Health Centre
Westburn Road
Aberdeen AB25 2AY
United Kingdom

Dr Andra James
Departments of Obstetrics and Gynecology and Medicine
Duke University Medical Center
Box 3967
Durham, NC
United States of America

Dr Olav Meirik
Instituto Chileno de Medicina Reproductiva
Jose Ramon Gutierres 295, Depto 3
Santiago
Chile

Dr Herbert Peterson
Department of Maternal and Child Health
School of Public Health
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
School of Medicine
The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill
CB #7445
Chapel Hill, NC 27599-7445
United States of America

Ms Maria Steenland
Division of Reproductive Health
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
CDC Mailstop K-34
4770 Buford Highway, NE
Atlanta, GA 30341-3717
United States of America

Dr Naomi Tepper
Division of Reproductive Health
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
CDC Mailstop K-34
4770 Buford Highway, NE
Atlanta, GA 30341-3717
United States of America